Proceedings of the I·R·E

Journal of the Theory, Practice, and Applications of Electronics and Electrical Communication

Radio Communication • Sound Broadcasting • Television • Marine and Aerial Guidance • Tubes • Radio-Frequency Measurements • Engineering Education • Electron Optics • Sound and Picture Electrical Recording and Reproduction • Power and Manufacturing Applications of Radio-and-Electronic Technique • Industrial Electronic Control and Processes • Medical Electrical Research and Applications •

Acme

ELECTRONIC LIFE SAVERS
ANTIPERSONNEL AND ANTITANK MINE DETECTION

OCTOBER, 1945

Volume 33 Number 10

•

WINTER TECHNICAL MEETING, NEW YORK, N.Y.
January 23, 24, 25, and 26, 1946

The Institute of Radio Engineers

WHY CHOOSE UTC?

FOR WAR AND POSTWAR COMPONENTS

1 – UTC IS THE LARGEST TRANSFORMER SUPPLIER TO THE COMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY.

2 – THE SCOPE OF UTC PRODUCTS IS THE WIDEST IN THE INDUSTRY.

3 – UTC ENGINEERING LEADERSHIP IN THE INDUSTRY IS ACCEPTED . . . WE DESIGN TO YOUR NEEDS.

4 – THE QUALITY OF UTC PRODUCTS IS HIGHER THAN EVER.

5 – THE DEPENDABILITY OF UTC PRODUCTS IS BACKED BY MANY YEARS OF EXPERIENCE. UTC IS NOT A WAR BABY.

6 – UNEXCELLED PRODUCTION FACILITIES MAKE UTC'S PRICES RIGHT AND DELIVERIES ON TIME.

UTC

United Transformer Corp.

150 VARICK STREET NEW YORK 13, N. Y.

EXPORT DIVISION: 13 EAST 40th STREET, NEW YORK 16, N. Y., CABLES: "ARLAB"

ARMY E NAVY

ALL PLANTS

Proceedings of the I·R·E

Published Monthly by
The Institute of Radio Engineers, Inc.

VOLUME 33 — *October, 1945* — NUMBER 10

Responsibility for the contents of papers published in the PROCEEDINGS rests upon the authors. Statements made in papers are not binding on the Institute or its members.

The Institute of Radio Engineers

INCORPORATED

SECTIONS

Sections	Next Meeting	Chairman	Secretary	Address of Secretary
Atlanta	October 26	R. A. Holbrook	I. M. Miles	Georgia School of Technology, Atlanta, Ga.
Baltimore	—	R. N. Harmon	F. W. Fischer	714 S. Beechfield Ave., Baltimore, Md.
Boston	—	C. C. Harris	A. G. Bousquet	General Radio Co., Cambridge, Mass.
Buenos Aires (Argentina)	—	A. DiMarco	H. Krahenbuhl	Transradio Internacional, San Martin 379, Buenos Aires, Argentina
Buffalo-Niagara	October 17	J. M. Van Baalen	H. W. Staderman	264 Loring Ave., Buffalo, N. Y.
Cedar Rapids	October 19	F. M. Davis	J. A. Green	Collins Radio Co., 855—35 St., N.E., Cedar Rapids, Iowa
Chicago	October 19	Cullen Moore	L. E. Packard	General Radio Co., 920 S. Michigan Ave. Chicago 5, Ill.
Cincinnati	—	L. M. Clement	J. F. Jordan	The Baldwin Co., 1801 Gilbert Ave., Cincinnati 2, Ohio
Cleveland	October 23	H. B. Okeson	A. J. Kres	16911 Valleyview Ave., Cleveland 11, Ohio
Connecticut Valley	October 18	H. W. Sundius	L. A. Reilly	989 Roosevelt Ave., Springfield, Mass.
Dallas-Fort Worth	—	J. D. Mathis	B. B. Honeycutt	9025 Roanoak, Dallas 18, Texas
Dayton	October 18	L. B. Hallman	Joseph General	411 E. Bruce Ave., Dayton 5, Ohio
Detroit	October 19	L. H. Larime	R. R. Barnes	1810 Sycamore, Royal Oak, Mich.
Emporium	—	W. A. Dickinson	H. E. Ackman	West Creek, R. D. 2, Emporium, Pa.
Indianapolis	—	H. I. Metz	E. E. Alden	4225 Guilford Ave., Indianapolis, Ind.
Kansas City	—	R. N. White	Mrs. G. L. Curtis	6003 El Monte, Mission, Kan.
London (Canada)	—	B. S. Graham	C. H. Langford	Langford Radio Co., 246 Dundas St., London, Ont., Canada
Los Angeles	October 16	R. C. Moody	R. G. Denechaud	Blue Network Co., 6285 Sunset Blvd., Hollywood 28, Calif.
Montreal (Canada)	October 17	L. A. W. East	R. R. Desaulniers	Canadian Marconi Co., 2440 Trent Rd., Town of Mt. Royal, Que., Canada
New York		G. B. Hoadley	J. T. Cimorelli	RCA Manufacturing Co., 415 S. Fifth St., Harrison, N.J.
Ottawa (Canada)	—	W. A. Steel	L. F. Millett	33 Regent St., Ottawa, Ont., Canada
Philadelphia	November 1	D. B. Smith	P. M. Craig	Philco Corp., Philadelphia 34, Pa.
Pittsburgh	November 12	J. A. Hutcheson	C. W. Gilbert	52 Hathaway Ct., R.F.D. 1, Wilkinsburg 21, Pa.
Portland	—	Kenneth Johnson	C. W. Lund	Route 4, Box 858, Portland, Ore.
Rochester	October 18	G. R. Town	A. E. Newlon	Stromberg-Carlson Co., Rochester 3, N.Y.
St. Louis	—	B. B. Miller	N. J. Zehr	KWK, Hotel Chase, St. Louis 8, Mo.
San Diego	—	David Kalbfell	Clyde Tirrell	U. S. Navy Radio and Sound Laboratory, San Diego 52, Calif.
San Francisco	—	David Packard	William Barclay	Stanford University, Calif.
Seattle	November 8	G. L. Hoard	K. A. Moore	5102 Findley St., Seattle 8, Wash.
Toronto	—	F. H. R. Pounsett	Alexander Bow	Copper Wire Products, Ltd., 137 Roncesvalles Ave., Toronto, Ont., Canada
Twin Cities	—	—	Merle Ludwig	Minneapolis-Honeywell Regulator Co., Minneapolis, Minn.
Washington	November 12	H. A. Burroughs	L. C. Smeby	4801 Connecticut Ave., N.W., Washington, D. C.
Williamsport	November 7	L. E. West	F. L. Burroughs	2030 Reed St., Williamsport 39, Pa.

Subsections

Subsections	Next Meeting	Chairman	Secretary	Address of Secretary
Columbus	—	E. C. Jordan	Warren Bauer	376 Crestview Rd., Columbus 2, Ohio
Fort Wayne	—	—	—	—
Milwaukee	—	P. B. Laeser	E. L. Cordes	3304 N. Oakland Ave., Milwaukee, Wis.
Monmouth	—	L. J. Giacoletto	C. D. Samuelson	5 Russel Ave., Ft. Monmouth, N. J.
Princeton	October 12	W. C. Johnson	J. G. Barry	Princeton University, Princeton, N. J.
South Bend	—	H. E. Ellithorn	J. E. Willson	1002 S. Lombardy Dr., South Bend, Ind.

The Chairmen of the Sections of the Institute have been invited to express to the membership, in such editorial form as they may desire, views which they believe will be contributory to the future of the engineering profession. Thoughtful analyses and forward-looking discussions of this nature have been received. There follows, accordingly, a statement from the Chairman of the Connecticut Valley Section of the Institute.

The Editor

Responsibility of the Radio Engineer to the Engineering Profession

H. W. Sundius

In looking around, it seems fairly safe to say that the radio engineer is about the most hard-working chap in the category of engineers. He is engaged in one of the newest of engineering fields and one that seems to snowball in complexity as new facts become known and new vistas are opened. The net result is apt to be that the radio engineer lives with his head buried in a resistance-inductance-capacitance circuit and remains oblivious to the passage of the world about him.

Engineering is one of the oldest of professions. It dates back into ancient history when in military operations it was necessary to erect earthworks and tunnel underground for strategical operations. The builder of the pyramids must have employed engineers of no small ability. The present age of machinery, science, and invention has seen a huge amplification and subdivision of what was once only the military and civil engineer. The mother stone has been chipped into many pieces with many differently hued facets. The broad subdivisions that have emerged are mechanical, electrical, and chemical. These in turn have been chipped into tiny pieces too numerous to mention as specialization has progressed.

All this leads to a definite conclusion relative to the education and responsibilities of the radio engineer who is an important offshoot of the electrical profession. Is it not reasonable to suppose that the older heads in the engineering fraternity have something to offer the junior contemporary if he will avail himself of the experience, guidance, and fellowship afforded by already well-established councils of engineers?

In Connecticut there has existed for a number of years a so-called Connecticut Technical Council, Inc., comprising representation from ten engineering societies in which are included two architectural groups. This Council has a splendid record of achievement. Mention of some of the specific activities will serve to illustrate the advantages that have accrued to the practicing engineer, and perhaps suggest other fields of usefulness.

The Connecticut Technical Council assisted in evolving standards for licensing professional engineers and passed on a code of professional ethics. Enforcement of the licensing law and code of ethics has been an important and successful contribution of the council. Recommendations to the Governor for appointment to the State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors as well as other engineering boards in the state is a periodic and desirable function. Legislation affecting the engineer is carefully watched and the member societies stirred into appropriate action. Legislation favorable to the engineer and engineering is introduced. The administrator of the State Housing Authority was requested to include engineers on this Authority. Such Acts as the Science Mobilization Act and the National Labor Relations Act have been discussed and appropriate action taken.

The Council is now acting as an advisory body to manufacturers associations and chambers of commerce. In general, the object is to place the engineer on a plane commensurate with the importance of the profession even as the American Medical Association has acted for its constituents.

The radio engineer has, unfortunately for himself and for his profession, held himself aloof from such activities, generally speaking. There are a number of combined engineering councils throughout the country that are rendering equal or perhaps better performances than our own Connecticut group. You officers of I.R.E. Sections investigate the local opportunities that are awaiting you to serve and be served for your good, the good of your profession, and the ultimate welfare of the consuming public. In unity there is strength. Join with other engineers in a common undertaking for our mutual welfare.

Keith Henney

Board of Directors—1945-1947

Keith Henney was born in McComb, Ohio, on October 28, 1896. Here, in 1912, he had his first experience with radio via a crystal detector and a two-slide tuner. In 1915 he moved to Marion, Ohio, went through high school there, and acquired his first experience in publishing by spending a year as cub reporter on the daily paper. His radio experience continued by means of rotary spark gaps, Thordarson 1-kilowatt transformers, and glass-plate capacitors in his amateur station 8ZD. During his undergraduate years at Western Reserve University he taught radio in Waite High School, in Toledo, and served as wireless operator on the Great Lakes in the summers.

Mr. Henney was graduated from Western Reserve University in 1921, and went to Harvard University, where he took the courses offered by Pierce and Chaffee, in addition to undergraduate work in physics and mathematics.

In 1923 he joined the technical staff of the Western Electric Company, returning to Harvard in 1925 to earn his master's degree. The next five years were spent developing a radio laboratory for Doubleday, Doran and Company, publishers of *Radio Broadcast*. In 1929 his first book, "Principles of Radio" was published. It is now in its Fourth Edition. In 1930 he became associate editor of *Electronics* upon its founding by the McGraw-Hill Publishing Company, becoming managing editor in 1934, and editor-in-chief in 1935, a position which he still holds.

In 1933 he edited the "Radio Engineering Handbook," now in its Third Edition; published "Electron Tubes in Industry," in 1934; "Color Photography for the Amateur," in 1938; and with Beverly Dudley, a Fellow member of The Institute of Radio Engineers, edited the "Handbook of Photography," in 1939.

During 1944 and 1945 Mr. Henney served as editor-in-chief on a University of California National Defense Research Committee project, preparing maintenance manuals on electronic equipment for the Bureau of Ships of the United States Navy.

At the 1944 Rochester Fall Meeting he was awarded a plaque for "his many years of unselfish service to the radio and electronic industries through the technical press."

He became an Associate of The Institute of Radio Engineers in 1918, a Member in 1926, Senior Member in 1943, and a Fellow in 1943. He was appointed a member of the Board of Directors in 1945. A member of the New York Program Meetings and Papers Committee for a number of years before the formation of the New York Section, his continual urge for "papers with demonstrations" helped in bringing to the New York engineers papers which were interesting as well as instructive. He served on the Executive Committee of the newly formed New York Section during its formative stages. Mr. Henney is also a Fellow and past president of The Radio Club of America and a Fellow of the Photographic Society of America.

I.R.E. Special Committee on Obtaining Membership Talents and Volunteer Service*

E. FINLEY CARTER†, FELLOW, I.R.E. (Chairman)

DURING the past year, a special committee was appointed by the Executive Committee of the Institute for the purpose of obtaining membership talents and volunteer service to aid in broadening participation in various Institute activities. The immediate aim of this committee was to set up means of obtaining lists of qualified individuals from which members could be selected for appointment to committees or to other assignments.

In exploring the possible approaches for accomplishing this aim, a number of conclusions were reached and recommendations have been made to the Executive Committee and the Board of Directors. Some of these recommendations were of a general nature while others were more specific in their relation to the procedures for selecting committee members and administering committee activities.

Among the specific recommendations was the one to establish in each Section a Section Personnel Committee whose function it would be to advise the National Office of personnel whom it deemed capable of and interested in serving on various committees of the Institute. This local committee would also recommend members for transfer from Associate to higher grades and assist such members in making transfers by arranging for sponsors and by securing and transmitting relevant information to the Admissions Committee.

The underlying reasons for the recommendation that each Section have a Committee on Personnel can be more fully appreciated in the light of the expansion that has taken place both in membership and in the scope of the Institute's activities. It is no longer possible for the Board of Directors or any similar group to be well versed in the qualifications and the personal interests of the Institute's thousands of members. On the other hand, Personnel Committees in each of the various sections can know and appraise the talents of their respective members and should, therefore, be able to render invaluable service to the Institute through the recommendations they make. This service should result, not only in more effective committees, but also in a better distribution and wider representation in Institute affairs. The work of the various Section Personnel Committees may prove to be an important step in the decentralization of that part of the Institute's administrative activities which can best be executed within the Sections.

Although only two specific functions were enumerated in Professor Turner's letter recommending that Section Personnel Committees be set up in the various Sections, others will, no doubt, become apparent to these committees as they get underway. In selecting the Committee members, the Chairmen will probably want to pick men who, through their associations, can well represent the personnel of the entire Section.

Organization and Duties of Section Personnel Committees

The Chairman of the Section Personnel Committee should be a man whose interest and abilities particularly qualify him for the appointment. He should be assisted by committee members who are in the aggregate well acquainted with most, if not all, of the Section's members and engineers of standing in near-by non-Section territory. They should be familiar with the major activities of the Institute, the requirements for admission to the various membership grades, and the interest and abilities of the Section personnel.

As the name implies, the Section Personnel Committee should be a service group assisting the personnel composing the Section to derive the maximum benefits from I.R.E. membership by making their individual contributions through active participation in Institute affairs. By rendering this service effectively, the Section Personnel Committee can materially aid in assuring the selection of interested and well-qualified personnel to man the many important Institute committees.

In order to carry out its work, the Section Personnel Committee should first obtain a list of all members within the geographical bounds of its respective Section. However, the list should not be limited to the participants from their particular Section. It should also contain suggested names of any communication and electronic engineers in the neighboring territory, even though not covered by a Section, which the Section Personnel Committee believes should be included. This list should be classified as to membership grades and should contain pertinent information which will be helpful in determining when members qualify for transfer to higher grades. It should record interest and qualifications of individual members to aid the Section Personnel Committee in supplying the National Office with information which will allow the maintenance of a current list of personnel whose particular interest and abilities qualify them for work on committees or in other Institute activities.

From the data assembled for its working records, the Section Personnel Committee can help the Admissions Committee by first determining which members are qualified for transfer to a higher grade and then by contacting these members and helping those who want to

* Decimal classification: R060. Original manuscript received by the Institute, March 12, 1945.

transfer to make certain that their applications contain sufficient information to aid the Admissions Committee in passing on these applications. By helping members in contacting the necessary sponsors and by seeing that sponsors are provided with information to evaluate properly the engineering accomplishments of the applicants, the Section Personnel Committee can appreciably aid the Admissions Committee in expediting the transfers.

In the carrying out of its functions, the Section Personnel Committee should seek to maintain the closest co-operation with Membership Committees in their respective Sections as well as with any other committee whose activities involve personnel functions.

Vacuum-Tube Radio-Frequency-Generator Characteristics and Application to Induction-Heating Problems*

T. P. KINN†, SENIOR MEMBER, I.R.E.

Summary—**Induction heating at radio frequencies is rapidly taking its place in many industrial processes. The high-power vacuum tube, in the past used principally in radio applications, is now generating radio-frequency energy for industrial use. To apply this energy properly to industrial heating problems, it becomes necessary that engineers active in all phases of industry understand the characteristics and limitations of the vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator.**

The fundamentals of the vacuum-tube self-excited oscillator and design considerations which determine the characteristics of the radio-frequency generator are reviewed and illustrated. In general, the characteristics show a high-impedance, constant-current, variable-voltage generator which requires manipulation of load circuits to load the generator properly. Methods are illustrated for accomplishing proper loading, and numerical examples are given illustrating the formulas and procedures necessary to any induction-heating problems.

DUE TO wartime conditions, radio-frequency heating has had a chance to demonstrate that it can be a very useful tool. The vacuum tube used as a generator of this radio frequency has therefore placed itself in industry along with the more common generators of electric energy. The vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator, like any other piece of electrical equipment, has its characteristics, and these characteristics dictate its uses and limitations. It is the purpose of this paper to define some of these characteristics and show how to apply the radio-frequency generator properly to induction-heating problems.

The phenomena of producing heat by an alternating magnetic field was known as far back as the 1880s. In 1890, Colby was granted a patent for heating in this manner. In 1900, it is believed the first practical induction furnace was placed in operation by Kjellin. It has taken the ensuing years to produce electrical equipment suitable for supplying the alternating current at various frequencies for the purpose of induction heating. However, it has taken the need for "all-out" war production during these past years to provide the incentive for wide-spread use of this type of heating in industry. With this rapid advance in the use of induction heating, the use of the vacuum-tube oscillator as a source of alternating power for induction heating has shown a very rapid advance.

Except in isolated cases, the small amount of induction heating used in industry, prior to the present war, used power obtained from rotating machines or spark-gap oscillators. The vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator, along with the vacuum tube itself, is now showing its usefulness in industry. Because the vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator has been confined to the radio field up to this time, its operation and its characteristics are not too well known to those not connected with the radio industry.

Induction heating is now being done at frequencies from 60 to 10,000 cycles and higher by rotating machinery. The rotating machine is a common source of power, and therefore its use and limitations for induction heating are well known. Service and maintenance problems are well established.

The spark-gap oscillator finds its most useful range of frequencies between 20 and 200 kilocycles. This type of generator is very useful for certain specific applications. The main advantages are its simplicity and ease of operating technique, while its limitations are power output and reliability. New developments surrounding the spark gap itself, which are appearing now and will appear after the war, will help better the output and reliability of this type of generator.

The scope of both the rotating machine and the spark-gap generator is limited, and it is for this reason that the vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator has stepped into the picture to pick up where these other machines leave off. The vacuum-tube oscillator can do many of the jobs now being done by the rotating machine or the spark gap, and in addition, do many more jobs which neither of these types can accomplish. At the present

* Decimal classification: R355.9×621.375.1. Original manuscript received by the Institute, September 21, 1944; revised manuscript received, June 8, 1945. Based in part on a paper presented before the Pacific Coast Technical Meeting of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, Los Angeles, California, August 29–September 1, 1944. Printed by permission of the A.I.E.E.

† Westinghouse Electric Corporation, Baltimore, Md.

time, when a job can be done by either rotating machine or a vacuum-tube generator, the initial investment cost is two or three to one in favor of the rotating machine. This is primarily due to the well-established manufacturing procedures and facilities for the rotating machine. Postwar use of the vastly expanded radio facilities, plus ever-increasing demand, will reduce this difference rapidly.

Radio-Frequency-Generator Characteristics

To the radio engineers the generation of radio-frequency power is not new, but to the average user in industry and to many engineers not directly associated with the radio industry, the radio-frequency generator is definitely a new device. Because the radio engineer has the background necessary properly to design the vacuum-tube radio-frequency generator, it has fallen to his lot to design and help produce the equipments which are now finding their way into industry. The uses to which the radio-frequency generator is being put in industry are numerous and in most cases entirely foreign to the radio engineer. For this reason, the radio engineer has had to analyze and study the various requirements in industry and transcribe these requirements into electrical specifications around which the radio-frequency generator must be designed. This is not an easy task because new uses for radio-frequency heating are constantly being found, which in many cases rapidly make obsolete the specifications devised by the engineers. Properly to specify and design the radio-frequency equipment for high-frequency heating, the engineer must familiarize himself thoroughly with the theories and practices necessary for the application of high-frequency heating. It is the purpose of this paper to cover some of the more important characteristics that must be designed into the radio-frequency generator, and how these characteristics affect the application of the generator to induction-heating problems.

The radio-frequency generator goes into industry as another tool just the same as the lathe, the automatic screw machine, or the spot welder, and therefore its design must anticipate its use in a similar manner to these other industrial tools. The radio-frequency generator must conform to the following basic requirements:

1. *Minimum Cost:* Equipment designed and manufactured for competitive sale in industry must, of necessity, be low in cost. In the majority of cases radio-frequency heating is competing with more conventional types of heating processes, with the result that over-all product cost must be considered when installing a new heating process. Both the initial-equipment cost and maintenance cost always have a direct bearing on a final product cost.
2. *Simplicity:* The radio-frequency generator is installed in many different types of factories, the same as any other machine tool. The personnel who install and operate the equipment are, in practically all cases, unfamiliar with electronic equipment. There are no experienced radio operators available to operate and maintain the equipment. The radio-frequency equipment, therefore, must be as simple as possible so that, both from the maintenance standpoint and the operating standpoint, it will be possible for inexperienced personnel to perform the necessary functions.
3. *Ruggedness:* To stand the same rough treatment that other machine tools are designed to withstand, the radio-frequency generator and the components from which it is constructed must be capable of continuous operation under dirty conditions and hard handling by inexperienced personnel.
4. *Flexibility Output:* Practically all materials when heated change their electrical and physical characteristics. These changes in characteristics throughout a heat cycle reflect a variation in load on the radio-frequency generating equipment. Radio engineers have been accustomed to designing equipment for operation into constant loads reflected by antennas or transmission lines. This is not so with industrial radio-frequency generators, and therefore the circuits used must be capable of compensating for the changes in load initiated by changes in characteristics of the material being heated.

The self-excited oscillator has been universally adopted as the type of radio-frequency generator which comes the closest to fulfilling the above requirements. Because of its simplicity it meets the requirements of low cost and easy operation. The small number of components used in the self-excited oscillator reduces the chance of failure and permits expenditure on these components to

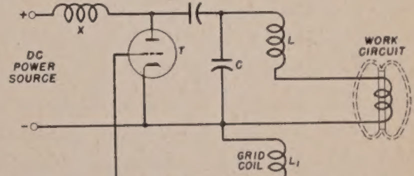


Fig. 1—Oscillator and work circuits.

produce rugged and trouble-free equipment. The self-excited oscillator is also a very ready answer to the problem of supplying power to a variable load. This latter condition is most readily accomplished in induction heating by making the work or load circuit a part of the oscillator tank circuit. This is illustrated in Fig. 1.

There are many types of self-excited oscillator circuits, the merits of which are all familiar knowledge to the radio engineer. Fig. 1 is the most commonly used self-excited oscillator circuit for induction-heating purposes. The circuit shown in Fig. 1 (see also the associate Figs. 6, 7, and 8) has been reduced to the basic fundamentals by elimination of filament supply, bias supply, plate supply, and control circuits normally associated with a complete oscillator, for the purpose of simplicity.

This circuit is commonly used for induction heating because it fulfills the following design requirements:

1. It is simple, to the point of having a minimum number of components. 2. Protection to operating personnel is obtained by having one side of the work or load coil grounded. This is extremely important where inexperienced personnel is using high-frequency equipment with dangerous high voltages. 3. Grid excitation can be varied readily and even automatically to assure proper excitation to the oscillator tube under varying load conditions. 4. The frequency of oscillation is determined by the plate tank circuit, of which the load circuit is a part. Variations in load are thereby accompanied by a shift in oscillator frequency to insure maximum efficiency from the oscillator tube.

Most induction-heating problems resolve themselves into the number of ampere turns necessary to produce a magnetic flux capable of inducing the desired heat into the material. This subject will be discussed later in the paper. The number of turns which can be used in the work coil is quite often restricted, and therefore it is almost always necessary that the generator be capable, not only of supplying power (kilowatts), but also of supplying a maximum of current flow. The current available from the self-excited oscillator is the tank current available in the plate circuit under full-load conditions. It is desirable that this tank current be as high as practicable within the limitations of efficient operation of the oscillator. The relation of kilovolt-amperes in the tank circuit to kilowatts in the work therefore becomes an important factor in the design of a radio-frequency generator. This ratio of kilovolt-amperes in the tank circuit to kilowatts in the work is commonly known as the working Q.

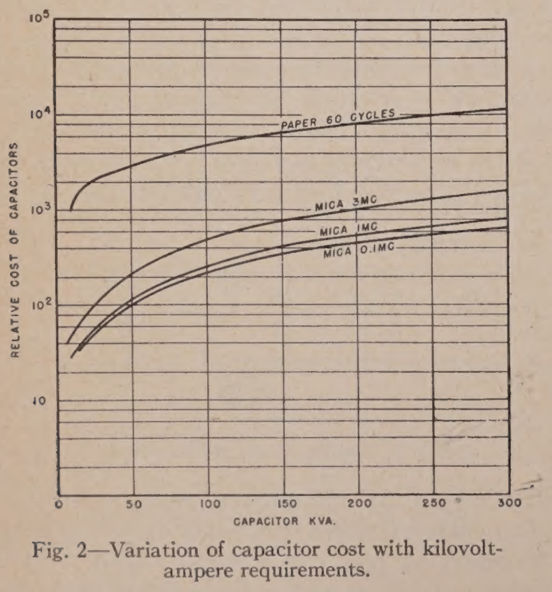


Fig. 2—Variation of capacitor cost with kilovolt-ampere requirements.

Oscillations in a self-excited oscillator normally take place around the circuit exhibiting the highest kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio. It is therefore necessary to maintain a higher value of kilovolt-amperes in the complete oscillator-tank circuit than exists in that portion of the tank circuit which is represented by the load. Circuit loss is normally expressed by the value $Q=\omega L/R$. If we multiply both the nominator and denominator by I^2 we

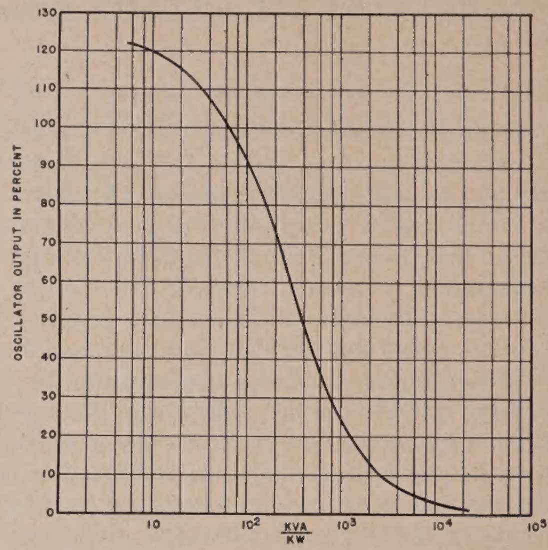


Fig. 3—Variation of oscillator output with tank-circuit-amperes-per-work-circuit-kilowatts ratio.

have $\omega LI^2/RI^2=EI/W=KVA/KW$. The kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio or Q of the tank circuit must therefore be larger than the kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt or Q of the work circuit, to insure that oscillations take place around the total tank circuit. If the Q of the load circuit should become larger than that available in the oscillator tank circuit, oscillations will attempt to take place around only the work circuit with a resultant poor impedance match between the work and the oscillator tube and a resultant unstable condition. In other words, we have a parasitical oscillation around the work circuit which produces inefficient operation and probably overloads the oscillator tube.

To obtain the high circulating tank current required to satisfy the above conditions, it is necessary that the plate tank capacitor be as large as practicable. There are two main factors which usually control the maximum value of this capacitance. The first factor is that of economy and space. As the capacitance of the tank capacitor increases, the cost and size of this capacitor increase. The cost and size usually increase quite rapidly as the kilovolt-ampere rating of the capacitor goes beyond standard available ratings. It is usually impracticable to include large values of capacitance due to the added space required in the generator to house or package this additional capacitance. Fig 2 shows graphically the relative increase in cost of this type of capacitor. The second factor which controls the maximum size of the tank capacitor is the allowable loss in power that can be tolerated in the oscillator tank circuit. Normal design of vacuum tubes allows for practically no excess power

from the tube which may be dissipated in the oscillator circuit elements $L-C$ and still leave normal expected power for useful output from the generator. As the tank current increases due to increased tank capacitance, the tank-coil loss increases rapidly. This power must be supplied by the vacuum tube and is not useful output. Fig. 3 illustrates this condition and is plotted from data

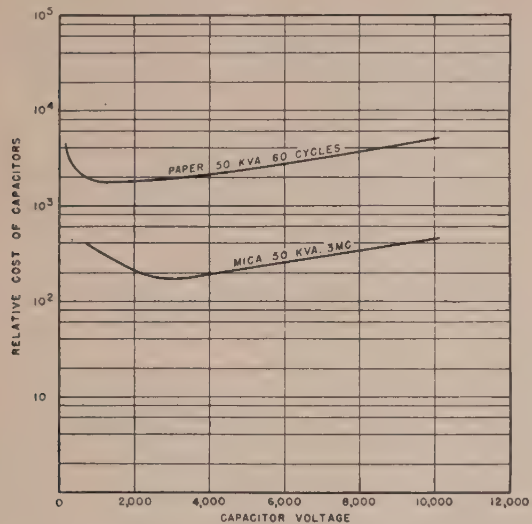


Fig. 4—Variation of capacitor cost with terminal voltage.

from an actual 10-kilowatt generator. This curve indicates that normal rated output from the radio-frequency generator takes place at a kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio of approximately 50.

From Fig. 4, it is obvious that high current can be obtained more economically at low values of voltage. It would therefore seem desirable to use vacuum tubes which operate on low values of plate voltage, but here we run into the fact that the vacuum tube is basically a high-impedance device and consequently requires high voltages to obtain the power desired. The designer of the radio-frequency generator and also the designer of the vacuum tube itself are therefore required to use high-voltage and high-impedance circuits.

In general, the plate potential used for the operation of the vacuum tube increases with the power output of the tube. This condition requires the use of high-current, high-voltage, high-frequency, low-loss capacitors in the oscillating circuit of the oscillator. Such capacitors are at the present time constructed with mica, pressurized gas, paper, or oil as the dielectric material. Each type has its construction limitations which restrict the kilovolt-ampere ratings to rather low values compared to that needed in the higher-powered oscillators. The paper and conventional oil capacitors have too high a power factor, with the result that, although a relatively high value of kilovolt-amperes can be provided, the power dissipated in the capacitor at the high frequencies involved is abnormal and cannot be tolerated. The mica and compressed-gas capacitors have sufficiently low power factors to permit reasonable losses in the capacitor at high frequencies, but to date, physical limitations in construction restrict these types of capacitors to relatively low values of capacitance and current-carrying capabilities.

Keeping in mind the above limitations, the design engineer must produce an equipment with a maximum kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio in line with cost limitations and size limitations on the complete equipment. Assuming that a kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio of 50 is the most economical ratio, the designs for various standard NEMA ratings will result in characteristics approximately as shown in Fig. 5 when designed for frequencies lying in the range of 100 to 550 kilocycles.

Fig. 5 indicates that the kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio has been held constant at a value of 50 for all ratings up to approximately 50 kilowatts. Above 50 kilowatts the effective kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio drops, due primarily to limitations in oscillator tank-capacitor capabilities. As future developments in the capacitor field are made, this condition will be corrected or bettered. The curve of radio-frequency voltage shown in Fig. 5 represents the maximum usable radio-frequency voltage from the generator. This value is a function of the tube complement selected for each power rating and the plate potential used for the oscillator tubes. The available radio-frequency voltage increases as the rating of the generator increases due to the necessity of using larger tubes operating at higher plate voltage as the power goes up. With a constant kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio and a gradually increasing tank voltage as the size of the radio-frequency generator increases, we have available larger values of tank current as the size of the generator increases. This is illustrated by the current curve of Fig. 5.

The only variable or adjustable characteristic of the radio-frequency generator is the available radio-frequency voltage. This voltage, of necessity, must be varied as the character of the load changes by using more or less of the generator tank inductance to maintain a given frequency. The result is that, in effect, we have a constant-current, variable-voltage, and high-internal-impedance generator.

The kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt curve shown in Fig. 5 is for full output from the radio-frequency generator. Quite often, full power capabilities are not required from the generator, with the result that the kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio increases in direct proportion to the drop in power requirements. It becomes possible, by taking advantage of this characteristic, to supply power to excessively high kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio loads.

The generally accepted frequency range for the radio-frequency generator for induction-heating use lies between 100 and 550 kilocycles. The upper limit of this range has been arbitrarily set, for two reasons. The frequencies between 550 and 1500 kilocycles are occupied by the broadcast stations of this country, and it has

been generally accepted as good practice to keep industrial generators from operating in this frequency range to eliminate the possibility of interference to broadcast reception. Except for special case-hardening problems where extremely shallow depth of penetration is necessary, the frequencies above 1500 kilocycles are normally used for dielectric heating rather than induction heating. This leaves 550 kilocycles as the normally accepted upper-frequency limit for induction heating.

For a given set of conditions, it is possible to raise the kilovolt-amperes in a radio-frequency generator by raising the frequency, because lower capacitive reactance and resultant higher generator current can be obtained as the frequency is increased. The majority of radio-frequency generators, therefore, operate at frequencies from 400 to 550 kilocycles to take advantage of this increase in kilovolt-amperes. This range of frequency is adequate for practically all types of induction-heating problems and provides the most economical design.

In all rotating-machine problems the load is adjusted to a point where efficiency and output satisfy the ratings of the generator. This same procedure is necessary for proper and efficient operation of the radio-frequency generator. The rotating-machine and spark-gap oscillator are both generators with low internal-impedance characteristics. The majority of induction-heating loads are also low-impedance, with the result that adjustment for proper efficiency and full power from the generator is relatively simple. The radio-frequency generator has an inherent high-impedance characteristic, and to apply this type of generator to the low-impedance induction-heating loads, it becomes necessary to obtain a suitable impedance match between the load and the radio-frequency generator.

In the case of the rotating machine, full power is obtained from the generator by power-factor-correction capacitors connected across the load or by use of step-down transformers. In the case of the radio-frequency generator, the solution is handled in much the same manner. The usual method for taking power from a radio-frequency generator has been illustrated in Fig. 1. It is necessary first to arrive at a suitable coil design which will allow rated power to be taken from the generator with the current available from the generator. This is accomplished by suitable selection of ampere turns and spacing between the work and the coil. In general, the number of turns in the work coil is selected to give

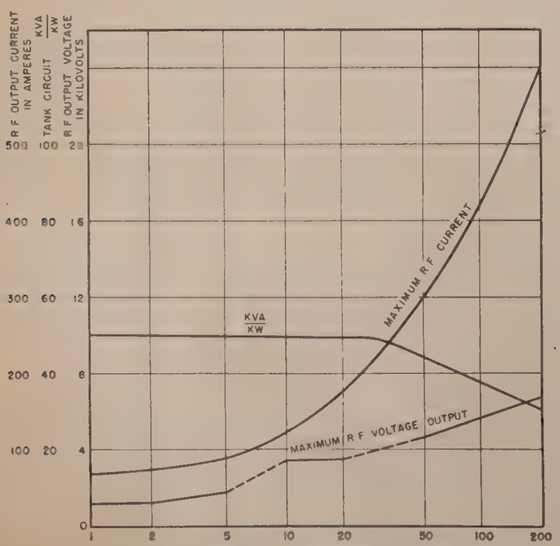


Fig. 5—Typical oscillator characteristics.

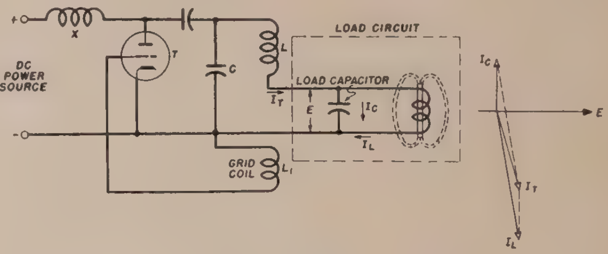


Fig. 6—Load-capacitor circuit.

the desired ampere turns. This subject will be discussed later. Many jobs are such that the impedance-match and ampere-turns requirements cannot be met, due to physical limitations. For instance, it is often physically impracticable to obtain a sufficient number of turns in the work coil, due to the shape of the piece to be heated. Then again, the shape of the material may restrict the proximity between work and the work coil. This latter condition is normally referred to as coupling. With close proximity between coil and work we have "tight" coupling; and when the coil is a considerable distance from the part to be heated we have "loose" coupling. To correct the condition where insufficient ampere turns are available to load the radio-frequency generator properly, there are two or three methods which may be used.

The first of these methods is similar to that used for capacitance coupling from a tank circuit into a resonant-antenna circuit; that is, we connect capacitance across the work coil as shown in Fig. 6. If the work coil plus this additional capacitor were chosen to become resonant at the oscillating frequency, the circuit would be functioning exactly the same as if the load circuit were an antenna system tuned to resonance. The connection of the capacitor across the work coil can also be compared with the use of power-factor-correction capacitors across the output of a rotating machine to correct the power factor of the load. When a capacitor is connected across a work circuit we are, in effect, correcting the power factor as we are actually partially tuning the work circuit to resonance. Fig. 6 also illustrates the approximate phase relation of voltage and current that exists in this circuit. The extent to which capacitance may be added across the work coil to increase the kilovolt-amperes in the work circuit is limited to the kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio in the work circuit which does not exceed approximately 80 per cent of the working

kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio of the total generator-tank circuit. For average-type induction-heating loads, it is quite often possible to increase the work-circuit current from two to three times that of the tank circuit by this method before unstable operation results.

The second method which may be used to increase the load-circuit current is shown in Fig. 7. A transformer is placed in series with the generator oscillating circuit. This transformer is a step-down transformer with a

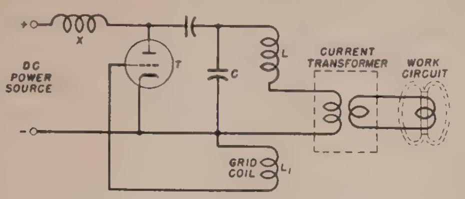


Fig. 7—Current-transformer circuit.

high-current, low-voltage secondary (low-impedance) to match the low impedance of a high-current load or work circuit. Because these transformers are operating at radio frequencies they are usually of the air-core type which means high leakage reactance with resultant poor efficiency. At machine frequencies and lower radio frequencies, iron-core transformers are used in special cases in order to obtain high-current concentrations. In general, the design of current transformers involves the same problems of turns ratio, leakage inductance, copper loss, and voltage insulation that are encountered in any radio-frequency-transformer design. Many commercial transformers are now on the market using oil or gas as a means of increasing voltage insulation.

The current transformer is ideal when the work circuit must necessarily be of very low impedance such as that obtained from a single-turn coil tightly coupled to the work. There are many jobs which fall within this category, and therefore it is quite common to find this type of impedance matching being used. If the impedance of the work circuit becomes the least bit high, due to long leads to the coil or multiturns in the coil, a current transformer becomes of little use. It is then necessary to resort to the method of connecting capacitance across the load circuit. A rule-of-thumb guide as to when a current transformer is desirable can be obtained from the load-circuit kilovolt-ampere-per-kilowatt ratio. If this ratio is in the order of 10 or less, and the current necessary in the work coil is from three to five times that available from the generator, the current transformer will provide the best impedance match and performance.

Still another method of impedance match can quite often be used to advantage when the impedance of the work circuit is low. It is possible to series two or more of the work circuits when the nature of the work permits the heating of more than one piece at a time. To do this it may be necessary to increase the heating time of an individual piece, but the effective heating time may be lower than for one piece because more than one piece is being heated simultaneously.

Fig. 8 shows this type of proposed connection. This is an especially useful method when the radio-frequency generator is of a higher rating than is necessary to perform the desired work.

Combinations of the above impedance-matching systems are, of course, possible, and will present themselves as the individual problems arise.

We now have the general characteristics of the radio-frequency generator roughly in mind, and we can proceed to study the application of this type of generator. The theory and calculations necessary to determine the work-circuit characteristics are given along with typical calculations which illustrate the use of the radio-frequency generator.

Radio-Frequency-Generator Application

In general, when considering an induction-heating problem, we are confronted with finding the answers to the following questions: 1. What is the rating of the oscillator best suited for the job? 2. What extras in the form of power-factor correction or impedance matching are necessary? 3. What is the general design of the work coil?

The first step in calculation requires the finding of the power density (watts per cubic inch) required to accomplish the heating.

$$\text{Power density} = \frac{\text{thermal power in watts}}{\text{volume of metal in coil}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Thermal power} &= 1.76 \times 10^{-2} MC\Delta T \\ &= \text{kilowatts} \qquad (1)\end{aligned}$$

where

M = rate of heating in pounds per minute
C = specific heat of material
ΔT = temperature rise in degrees Fahrenheit.

Power density is computed for a hollow cylinder on the basis of the volume of a solid cylinder of the same diameter. This is necessary, because, as far as eddy-current configurations and power input are concerned, hollow and solid shapes of materials behave identically. Skin effect limits the depth of penetration of currents into the work, with the result that the metal beneath this depth of penetration can have no electrical effect.

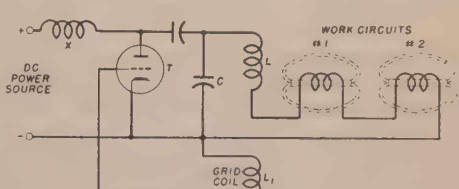


Fig. 8—Work circuits in series.

The second step in calculation is that of finding peak magnetizing force required. The following relationships give this quantity for several simple shapes into which nearly any problem in induction heating can be resolved:

Magnetic cylinder

$$H_0 = [(3.64PD \times d \times 10^3)/\sqrt{\rho f}]^{2/3} \qquad (2)$$

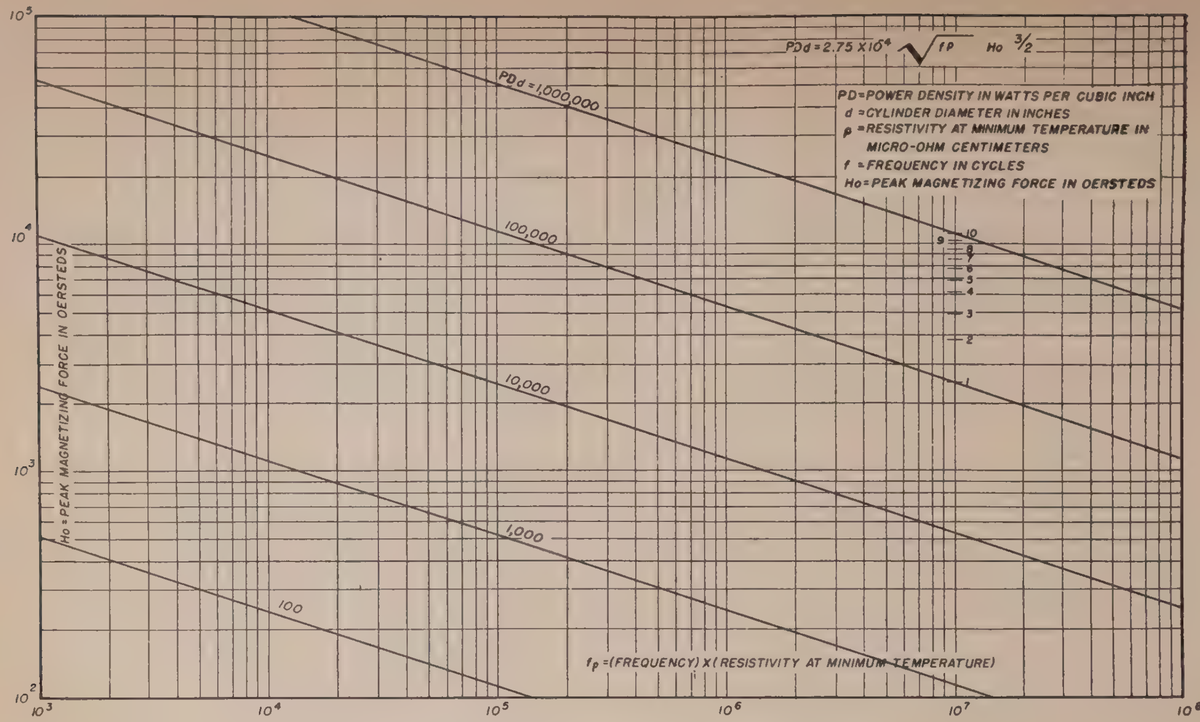


Fig. 9—Magnetizing force required for magnetic cylinder.

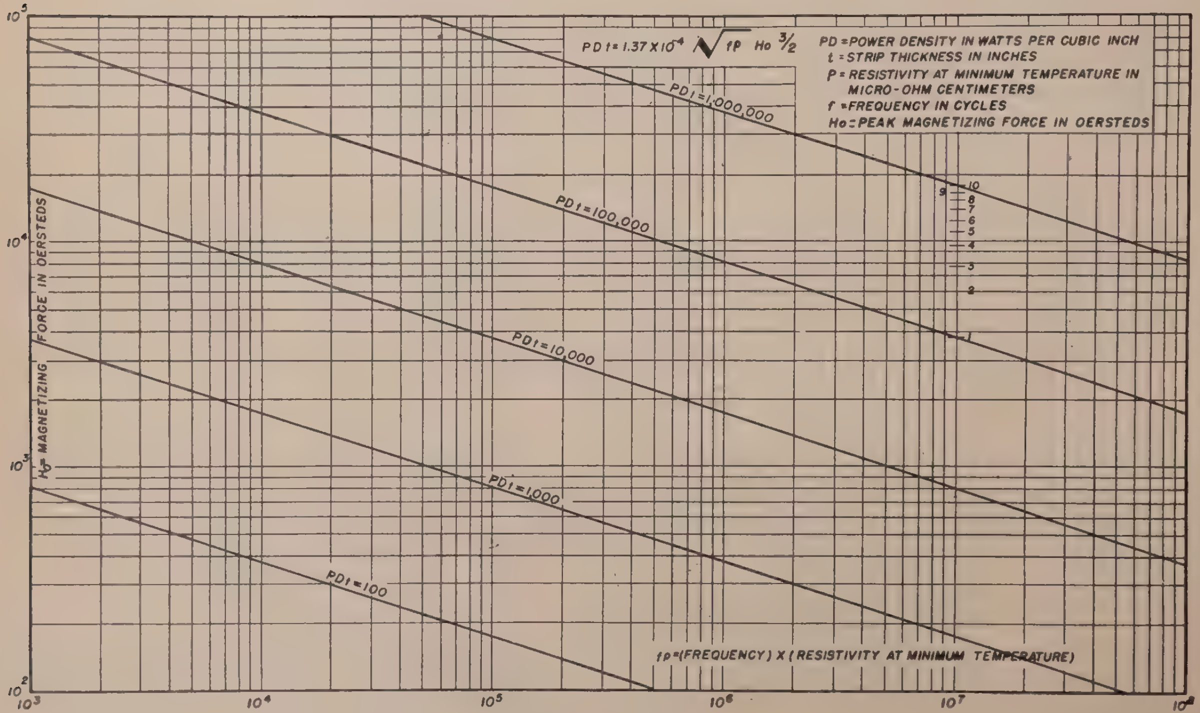


Fig. 10—Magnetizing force required for magnetic strip.

Magnetic strip

$$H_0 = [(7.3PD \times t \times 10^3)/\sqrt{\rho f}]^{2/3} \qquad (3)$$

Nonmagnetic cylinder

$$H_0 = [(61.3PD \times d \times 10^4)/\sqrt{\rho f}]^{1/2} \qquad (4)$$

Nonmagnetic strip

$$H_0 = [(1.23PD \times t \times 10^6)/\sqrt{\rho f}]^{1/2} \qquad (5)$$

where

PD = power density in watts per cubic inch
t = strip thickness in inches
d = cylinder diameter in inches
H_0 = peak magnetizing force in oersteds

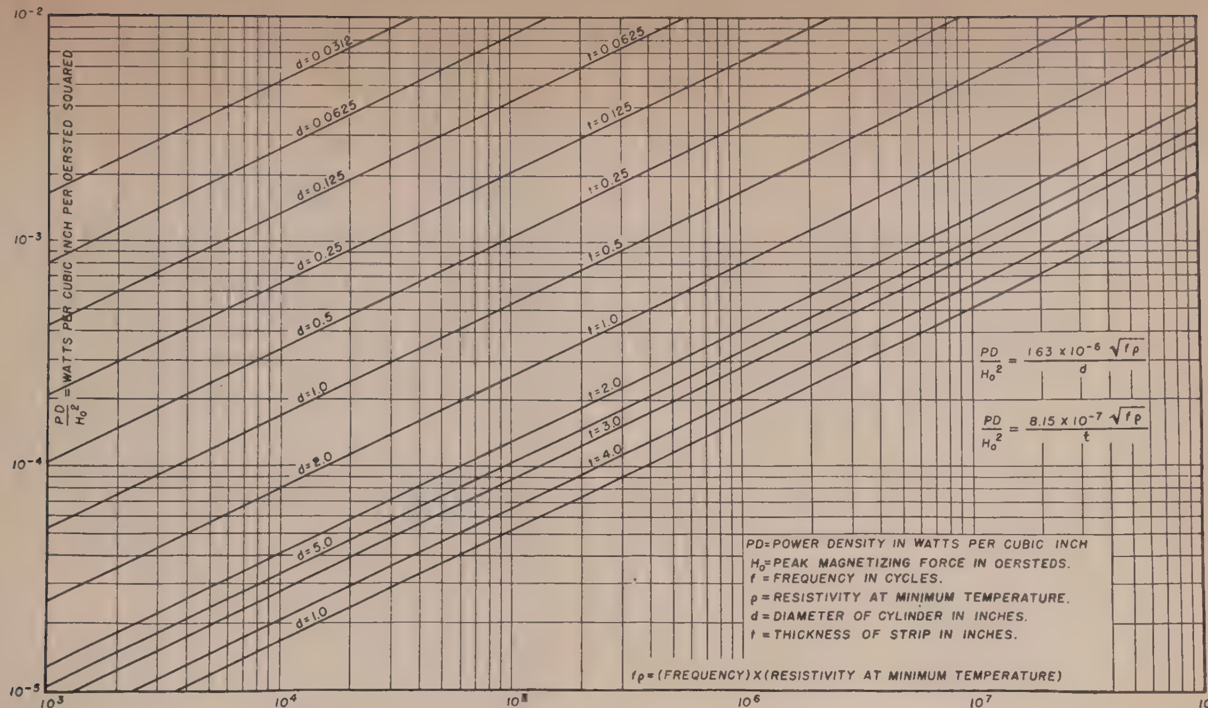


Fig. 11—Magnetizing force required for nonmagnetic materials.

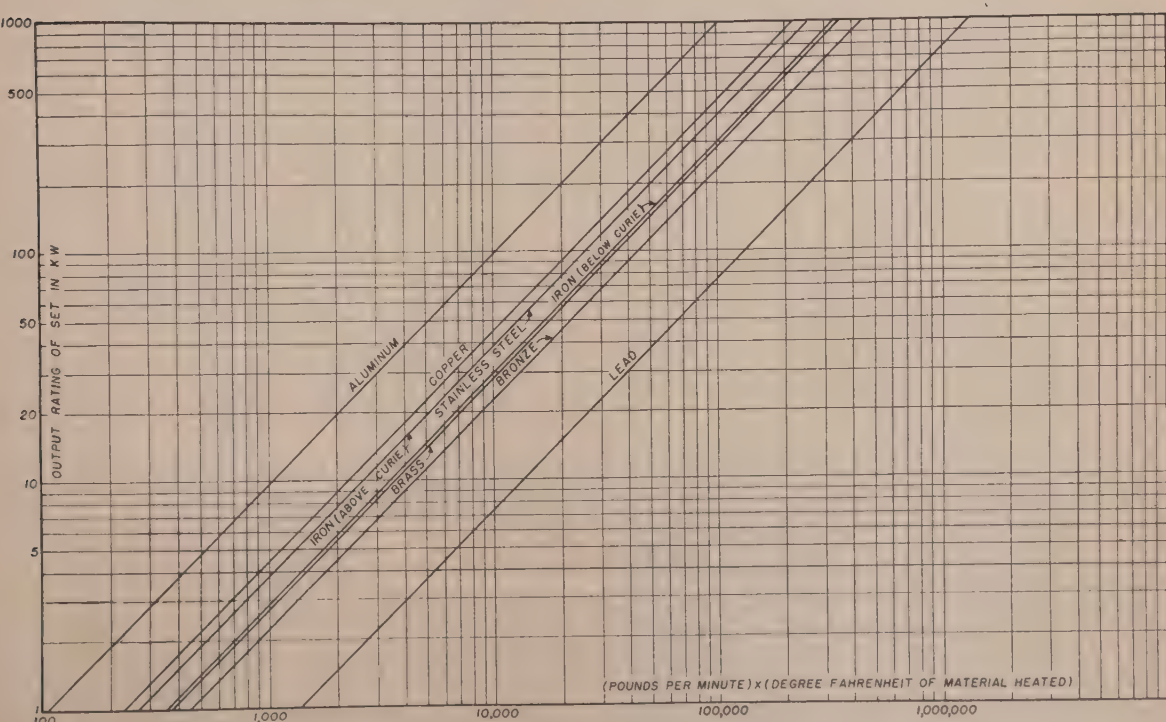


Fig. 12—Oscillator power capacity for radio-frequency heating requirements.

f = frequency in cycles

ρ = resistivity at minimum temperature in microhm-centimeters.

It will be noted that the resistivity was specified at minimum temperature. This is necessary to insure maximum power (H_0^2) into the work at the start of the heating cycle. As can be seen from the foregoing formula for H_0, the magnetizing force necessary for a given power density will drop as resistivity (ρ) increases with temperature.

Figs. 9 to 12 have been plotted for the magnetizing-force relationships, in order to assist in calculations.

The third step is that of determining voltage and current required in a coil to provide the required

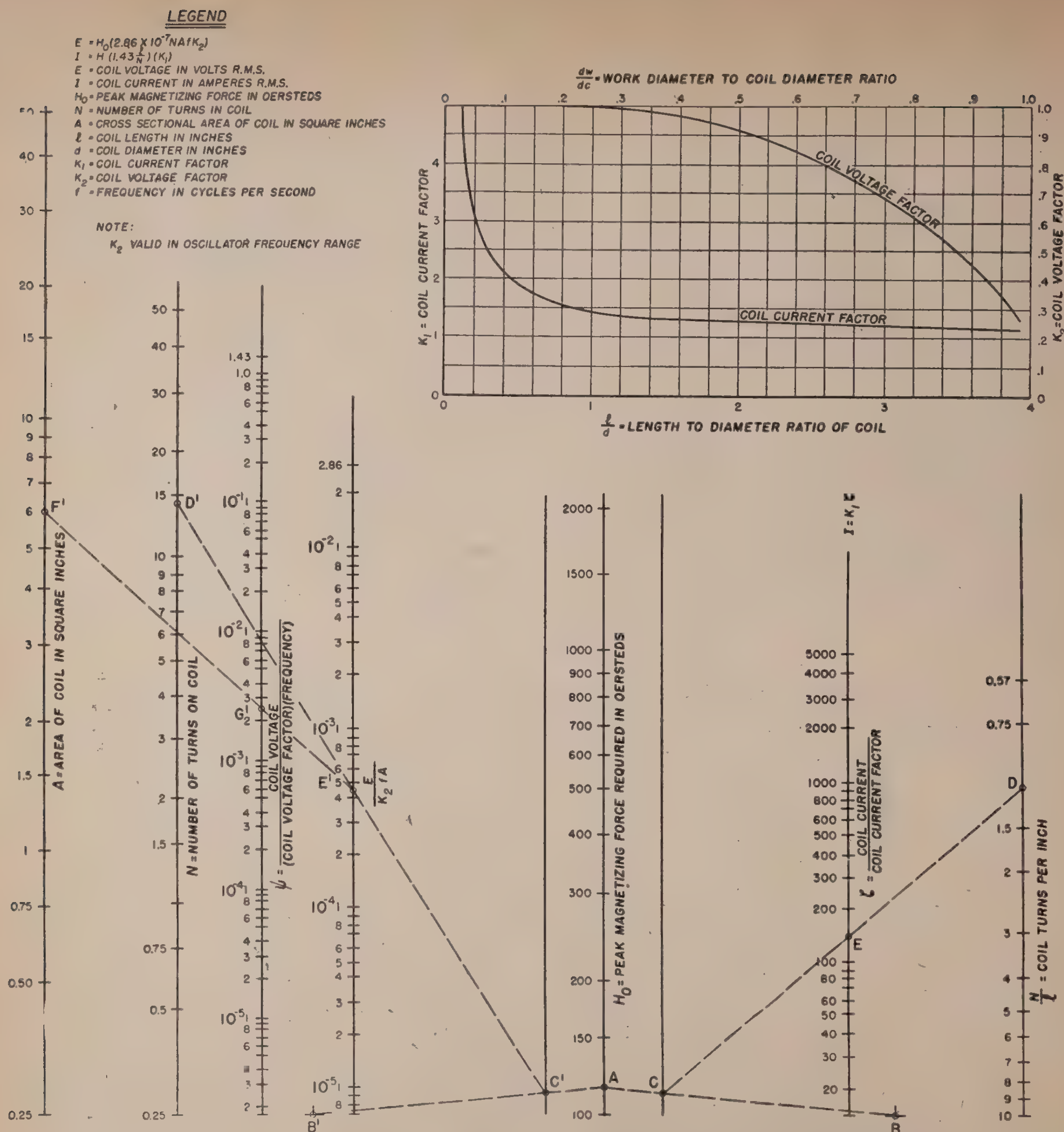


Fig. 13—Voltage and current of a solenoid as a function of peak magnetizing force.

magnetizing force. Coil dimensions must be assumed in correspondence with the conditions of the problem.

Voltage and current in terms of magnetizing force are given as

$$E = H_0(2.86 \times 10^{-7} fNAK_2) \tag{6}$$

$$I = H_0[1.43(l/N)K_1] \tag{7}$$

where

E = coil voltage in volts root-mean-square
I = coil current in amperes root-mean-square
H_0 = peak magnetizing force in oersteds
N = number of turns in coil
A = cross-sectional coil area in square inches
l = coil length in inches.

The constants K_1 and K_2 are factors by which coil current and coil voltage, respectively, are modified to correct for small length-to-diameter ratio of the coil and for the effect of metal in the field of the coil. These factors are based upon theoretical and empirical considerations and are plotted in Fig. 13, together with a nomograph for determining current and voltage using the foregoing relationships.

The coil-current factor K_1 is a function of the length-to-diameter ratio of the coil, and shows that, in order to reduce the current required for a given magnetizing force, this ratio should be as large as possible.

The coil-voltage factor K_2 is a function of the ratio of work-diameter-to-coil-diameter coupling and indicates

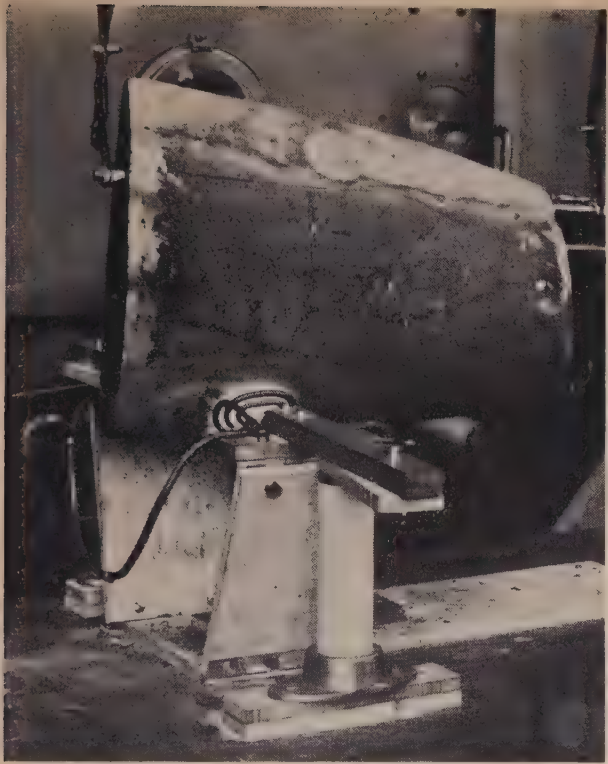


Fig. 14—Propeller-edge brazing at 450 kilocycles.

that at oscillator frequencies the coil voltage decreases as the diameter of the work is increased relative to that of the coil (tightly coupled). The effect is essentially the same for both magnetic and nonmagnetic cores at oscillator frequencies.

All that remains to complete the analysis is to determine the rating of the oscillator to be used. If current requirements are greater than can be provided by an oscillator of the correct power rating, impedance matching as described previously is necessary.

If we refer to Fig. 6, the rated oscillator current is shown as I_T. If the work coil L is partially tuned as indicated, the current in the tuning capacitor I_c will be very nearly 180 degrees out of phase with the coil current I_L. A work-circuit capacitor therefore is used with a reactance such that

$$I_c = I_L - I_T. \tag{8}$$

The total power rating which must be provided by the generator will be the sum of thermal power generated in the work and the I^2R coil loss.

Loss in the work coil is given[1] by the empirical formula

$$W_c = 1.40(d_c/d_w)\sqrt{(\rho_c/\rho_w)} \times W_w \tag{9}$$

where

W_c = coil loss in watts
W_w = power generated in work in watts
d_c = coil diameter
d_w = work diameter
ρ_c = coil resistivity at working temperature
ρ_w = work resistivity at minimum temperature. (Minimum temperature used to insure provision for maximum loss.)

A curve has been plotted in Fig. 12 from which total power required may be determined for several materials. These curves include coil losses encountered in normal heating problems, and can be used as a guide to generator power requirements.

Case hardening of the surface of a cylinder will be accomplished if the depth of current penetration is less than the depth of case desired, since a major portion of the heat input is generated within the depth of penetration, and if the rate of energy input is rapid enough, so that heat conduction to the interior of the work is minimized. As an approximation, the depth of penetration will be made always less than half the case thickness desired, and heat conduction will be depended upon for the remainder. The thermal problem of heat penetration into a cylinder under the conditions of case hardening is extremely complex. Simplifying assumptions therefore will be made for practical results. On the basis of experimental work, it has been found that a minimum power density of two kilowatts per square inch of surface area to be hardened is sufficient to cause a hardened case, if the heating cycle is short enough to prevent excessive conduction to the interior of the object to be heated. The power density required is dependent upon the type of hardening problem under consideration, and may vary from 4 to 10 kilowatts for normal applications, to 25 kilowatts or more per square inch for special thin case-hardening applications. Experimental work is required, in general, to determine the correct power.

Fig. 15—Internal-gear-tooth hardening at 450 kilocycles.

[1] R. M. Baker, "Heating of nonmagnetic electric conductors by magnetic induction-longitudinal flux," *Trans. A.I.E.E.* (*Elec. Eng.*, June, 1944), vol. 63, pp. 273–278; June, 1944.

Fig. 16—A 2-kilowatt industrial radio-frequency generator.

It will be assumed further that the material remains magnetic to a temperature of 1300 degrees Fahrenheit, and that it must be raised to a final temperature of 1600 degrees Fahrenheit in order to produce a hardened case. If a frequency of 450 kilocycles and a resistivity of 20 microhm-centimeters at minimum temperature is used, it is found by an analysis shown in the appendix that 720 oersteds (50) is the proper value of magnetizing force to be used. Other values of final temperature, power density, frequency, and resistivity, of course, will require a similar mathematical procedure.

If the current and voltage requirements as calculated fall within the range of the radio-frequency generator, using impedance matching where necessary, and the kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio of the work circuit is 80 per cent or less than that of the generator, it can be assumed that the problem is solved. Considerable flexibility is provided in most applications where work-coil dimensions and turns can be varied and where combinations of impedance-matching systems can be used.

When it appears impracticable to do the job at hand with a generator of suitable rating, it may be possible that a rotating machine will perform the job, provided its frequency is above a minimum specified by the following relationships.

Solid magnetic or nonmagnetic cylinder

$$\mu f = 71(\rho/d^2). \tag{10}$$

Hollow magnetic cylinder

$$f = 0.129\sqrt{(PD) \times d \times \rho/t^3}. \tag{11}$$

Hollow nonmagnetic cylinder

$$f = 7.75\rho/t^2. \tag{12}$$

Magnetic or nonmagnetic strip

$$\mu f = 35.2(\rho/t^2). \tag{13}$$

Magnetic permeability at minimum frequency (in terms of μf of (10) and (13))

$$\mu = \sqrt{123\mu f/PD} \tag{14}$$

where

μ = magnetic permeability under specified conditions of (30)

f = minimum frequency in cycles

ρ = resistivity at maximum temperature in microhm-centimeters

t = wall thickness in inches (hollow-cylinder) strip thickness (in inches)

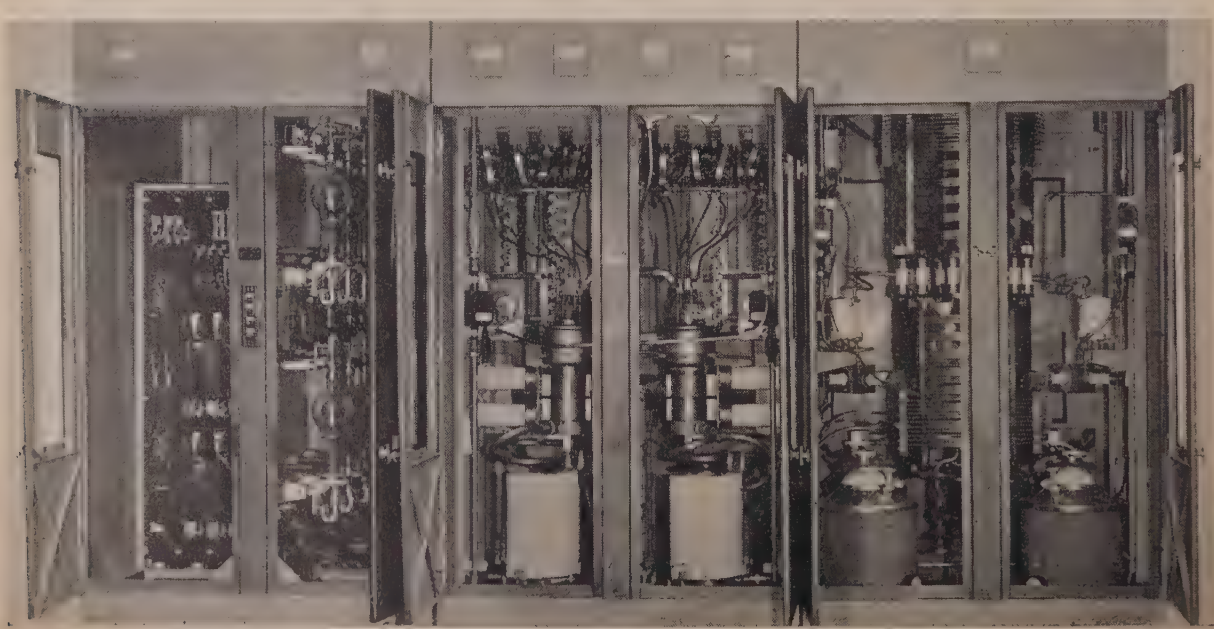


Fig. 17—A 200-kilowatt industrial radio-frequency generator.

d = outside diameter of cylinder in inches
PD = power density in watts per cubic inch.

The resistivity at maximum temperature is used in the equations for minimum frequency, because the largest value of this quantity will occur when the resistivity is a maximum. The hot resistivity is computed as

$$\rho \text{ hot} = \rho \text{ cold } (1 + \alpha \Delta t) \tag{15}$$

where

α = the temperature coefficient of resistivity
Δt = the temperature rise in degrees centigrade = the temperature rise in degrees Fahrenheit/1.8.

The following examples have been prepared to illustrate the procedure to follow in arriving at the answer to the three questions listed previously for various typical heating problems.

Example 1. Magnetic Strip

To illustrate the problem of heating a magnetic strip of steel, let us assume that we desire to fuse electroplated tin on the surface of a strip 2.5 inches wide and 0.12 inch thick. The temperature necessary to flow the tin is 550 degrees Fahrenheit, and we shall assume that the strip is traveling at a continuous rate of 15 feet per minute.

ρ = 20 microhm-centimeters (at minimum temperature).
A. Volume to be heated per minute = thickness $\times$ width $\times$ speed
$= 0.12 \times 2.5 \times 12 \times 15 = 54$ cubic inches per minute.
B. Weight heated per minute = volume per minute $\times$ pounds per cubic inch
$= 54 \times 0.286 = 15.4$ pounds per minute.
C. Thermal power $= 1.76 \times 10^{-2} \times 15.4 \times 0.12 \times (550-72)$
$= 15.5$ kilowatts.

To determine a power density it is necessary to assume a coil length. The turns per inch and the total length must be of the proper magnitude so that current and voltage limitations are not exceeded. This must be done by a cut-and-try method. In some cases, coil length is fixed by conditions of the problem, so that the only variation possible is in the turns-per-inch ratio. In this case the coil length will be assumed to be 12 inches.

D. Volume of metal in coil (length = 12 inches) $= 54/15 = 3.6$ cubic inches.
E. Power density $= 15{,}500/3.6 = 4300$ watts per cubic inch.
F. $PD \times t = 4300 \times 0.12 = 516$; $\rho f = 450{,}000 \times 20 = 9 \times 10^6$.
G. From Fig. 10, $H_0 = 116$.
H. Assume a coil
$l = 12$ inches (length); $N = 14$ (turns); $N/l = 14/12 = 1.17$;
area = 4 inches $\times$ 1.5 inches = 6 square inches.

In order to determine coil current and voltage from Fig. 13, the following procedure should be used:

I. Current
Locate $H_0 = 116$ (point *A*).
Draw *AB* (*B* is the same for all values of H_0).
Note point *C* and then locate $N/l = 1.17$ (point *D*).
Draw *CD* and locate point $E = 142$.
$I = K_1 \times (\text{point } E) = 1.20 \times 142 = 171$ amperes.

In order to apply the coil correction factor, l/d must be determined. As an approximation, d is taken as the so-called "effective diameter" of a rectangular coil, or that diameter which gives the same area as in the rectangular cross section.
Effective diameter

$$d_{\text{eff}} = \sqrt{A(\text{rectangular})/\pi/4} = \sqrt{(6 \times 4)/\pi}$$
$$= 2.76 \text{ inches}; \qquad l/d = 12/2.76 = 4.35.$$

$K_1 = 1.20$.
J. Voltage
Locate $H_0 = 116$ (point *A*).
Draw *A B'* (*B'* is the same for all values of H_0).
Note point *C'* and then locate $N = 14$ (point *D'*).
Draw *C'D'* and note that $E' = 4.5 \times 10^{-4}$ (E/fak_2).
Locate $A = 6$ (point *F'*) and draw *E'F'*.
$\psi = E/f_{K_2} = 2.7 \times 10^{-3}$ (point *G'*); $dw/dc \cong 0$; $K_2 = 1$.
$E = \psi K_2 f = 2.77 \times 10^{-3} \times 4.5 \times 10^5 \times 1 = 1250$ volts, coil voltage.
K. Rate of heating = pounds per minute $\times \Delta t = 15.4 \times (550-72) = 7360$.
From Fig. 12, total power required = 20,000 watts.

The curves in Fig. 12 give the approximate power required to heat a given load plus the heater-coil losses—a total of 20 kilowatts in this example.

L. Kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt for load circuit

$$(1.25 \times 171/20) = 10.7.$$

This value of kilovolt-ampere per kilowatt for the load circuit along with the 1250 volts and 171 amperes are all reasonable figures for a 20-kilowatt radio-frequency generator, and the coil assumption made to arrive at these figures is therefore entirely satisfactory.

Example 2. Nonmagnetic Strip

Assume that a 0.0625-inch-thick strip of stainless steel 15 inches wide is to be heated to a temperature of 720 degrees Fahrenheit. This is to be done in order to heat the material for a toughening drawing operation with a quick oil quench to follow immediately after the heating operation. It is assumed the strip will be traveling at a continuous rate of 2.5 feet per minute.

ρ = 20 microhm-centimeters at minimum temperature.
A. Volume to be heated $= 0.0625 \times 15 \times 2.5 \times 12 = 28$ cubic inches per minute.
B. Weight heated per minute $= 28 \times 0.286 = 8.0$ pounds per minute.
C. Thermal power $= 1.76 \times 10^{-2} \times 8.0 \times 0.12 \times (720-72)$
$= 10.8$ kilowatts.
D. Volume of metal per minute in coil (assume $l = 12$ inches) $= 28/2.5 = 11.2$ cubic inches.
E. Power density $= 10{,}800/11.2 = 965$ watts per cubic inch.
F. $\rho f = 450{,}000 \times 20 = 9 \times 10^6$.

G. From Fig. 11, $PD/H_0^2=3.9\times10^{-2}$ (by extrapolation) $H_0^2=965/3.9\times10^2=2.46\times10^4$; $H_0=157$ oersteds.

H. Assume a coil

$l=12$ inches; $N=12$; area $=18$ inches $\times 1.5$ inches $=27$ square inches.

From Fig. 13, $I/K_1=224$ $I=224\times1.3=291$ amperes coil current.

$$D_{\text{eff}} = \sqrt{27\times4/\pi} = 5.86 \text{ inches}; \qquad K_1 = 1.3;$$

$$\psi = 14.6\times10^{-3}$$

$dc/dw\cong0$ $K_2=1$; $E=14.6\times10^{-3}\times4.5\times10^5\times1=6600$ volts, coil voltage.

I. Rate of heating = pounds per minute $\times\Delta t$ $=8.0\times(720-72)=5190$.

From Fig. 12, total power required = 20,000 watts.

J. Load circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt $=6.6\times291/20=96$.

This is beyond the limits of a standard 20-kilowatt generator. Therefore, it is necessary to use a 50-kilowatt generator operating at reduced power to provide the high kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio necessary to satisfy this load condition.

Example 3. Solid Magnetic Cylinder

Let us assume that, in order to anneal 0.25-inch steel wire before drawing it through a reducing die, it is required to heat the wire to a temperature of 1000 degrees Fahrenheit. A continuous production rate of 40 feet per minute is required.

$\rho=20$ microhm-centimeter at minimum temperature.

A. Volume to be heated per minute $=(\pi/4)d^2l=\pi/4\times(0.25)^2\times40\times12=23.5$ cubic inches per minute.

B. Weight to be heated per minute $=23.5\times0.286=6.74$ pounds per minute.

C. Thermal power $=1.76\times10^{-2}\times6.74\times0.125\times(1000-72)$ $=13.7$ kilowatts.

D. Volume of metal in coil (assume $l=12$ inches) $=23.4/40=0.585$ cubic inch.

E. Power density $=13{,}700/0.585=23{,}400$ watts per cubic inch.

F. $f\rho=9\times10^6$; $PD\times d=23{,}400\times1/4=5850$.

G. From Fig. 9, $H_0=370$.

H. Assume a coil

$l=12$ inches; $N=48$; $d=0.75$ inch.

From Fig. 13, $I/K_1=132$; $K_1=1$; $I=132$ amperes, coil current.

$\psi=2.24\times10^{-3}$; $dw/dc=0.25/0.75=0.334$; $K_2=0.98$.

$E=2.24\times10^{-3}\times4.5\times10^5\times0.98=985$ volts, coil voltage.

I. Rate of heating = pounds per minute $\times\Delta t=6.74\times928$ $=6250$.

From Fig. 12, total power required = 18 kilowatts. A standard 20-kilowatt rating generator is therefore necessary. From Fig. 5, this rating of generator is capable of 175 amperes output. The aforementioned assumed coil design does not make full use of this output current; therefore, a change in coil design is necessary to match properly the generator impedance and to utilize the full 175 amperes available.

J. Assume a coil

$l=12$ inches; $N=36$; $d=0.75$ inch.

From Fig. 13, $I/K_1=175$ $K_1=1$; $I=175$ amperes, coil current.

$\psi=1.68\times10^{-3}$; $dw/dc=0.25/0.75=0.334$; $K_2=0.98$; $E=1.68\times10^{-3}\times4.5\times10^5\times0.98=742$ volts.

K. Load circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt

$$0.742\times175/18 = 7.2.$$

The current, voltage, and kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio of the load circuit now agree with the characteristics of a standard 20-kilowatt generator, and we therefore have arrived at a suitable work-circuit design.

Example 4. Solid Nonmagnetic Cylinder

We shall assume that it is desired to heat four-inch lengths of one-half-inch-diameter stainless-steel rod to a temperature of 1600 degrees Fahrenheit in order to perform a forging operation. A production rate of 15 such ends per minute is desired, neglecting loading time. Induction heating is ideal for this application, since heating can be confined to the four-inch length at the end of the rod.

A. Volume to be heated per piece $=\pi/4\times(0.5)^2\times4$ $=0.785$ cubic inch.

B. Weight to be heated per piece $=0.785\times0.288=0.226$ pound per piece.

C. Rate of heating = 15 pieces per minute $=0.226\times15$ $=3.39$ pounds per minute.

D. Thermal power $=1.76\times10^{-2}\times3.39\times0.125\times(1600-72)$ $=11.4$ kilowatts.

E. Power density $=11{,}400/0.785=14{,}550$ watts per cubic inch.

F. $\rho f=450{,}000\times20=9\times10^6$.

G. From Fig. 11, $PD/H_0^2=9.8\times10^{-3}$

$H_0^2=14{,}550/9.8\times10^3=1.48\times10^6$; $H_0=1220$ oersteds.

This is a relatively high magnetizing force to be easily obtained from an oscillator.

In order to obtain more easily the required magnetizing force, three coils will be used in series, heating three separate rods simultaneously.

H. Power density per coil $=14{,}550/3=4850$ watts per cubic inch.

I. Magnetizing force per coil.

$H_0^2=4850/9.8\times10^3=49.5\times10^4$; $H_0=705$ oersteds per coil.

By the use of three coils, the magnetizing force per coil has been reduced. The rate of heating per coil will be one third the original rate using one coil, but the over-all rate of heating will remain the same. Fig. 12 is based upon a coil loss which is proportional to the thermal power supplied. To this approximation the coil losses will remain unchanged, as will the total power capacity required of the oscillator.

J. Assume a coil
$l=4$ inches; $N=23$; $N/l=5.75$; $d=0.75$ inch.
From Fig. 13, $I/K_1=175$; $l/d=5.33$; $K_1=1.0$.
$I=175\times 1.0=175$ amperes; $\psi=2.04\times 10^{-3}$.
$dw/dc=0.5/0.75=0.665$; $K_2=0.77$.
$E=2.04\times 10^{-3}\times 0.77\times 4.50\times 10^5=710$ volts per coil.
Total voltage $=710\times 3=2130$.
K. Rate of heating $=3.39\times(1600-72)=5200=$ pounds per minute $\times\Delta t$.
From Fig. 12, 20 kilowatts will be required to supply useful power plus losses.
L. Load circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt $=2.130\times 175/20=18.6$.

The voltage, current, and kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio all satisfy the requirements of a standard 20-kilowatt generator, and the load has been made to match the generator perfectly by proper selection of the number of work coils and the proper number of turns in each coil.

Example 5. Nonmagnetic Hollow Cylinder

Assume that it is desired to heat a one-inch-diameter hollow brass tube with 0.05-inch wall thickness to a temperature of 322 degrees Fahrenheit, in order to flow an alloy coating which has been plated on the cylinder. A continuous rate of 25 feet per minute is required.

$\rho=8$ microhm-centimeters (at minimum temperature).
A. Volume to be heated per foot $=\pi/4[(D_{O.D.})^2-(D_{I.D.})]l=\pi/4[1^2-0.9^2]\times 12=1.80$ cubic inches per foot.
B. Weight of metal per foot = volume per foot $\times$ weight per cubic inch $=1.80\times 0.32=0.575$ pounds per foot.
C. Rate of heating $=25\times 0.575=14.4$ pounds per minute.
D. Thermal power $=1.76=10^{-2}\times 14.4\times 0.08\times(322-72)=5.05$ kilowatts.
E. Volume in coil of solid cylinder of same outside diameter (assuming a coil 12 inches long).
$V=\pi/4\times(1)^2\times 12=9.44$ cubic inches.
F. Power density $=5050/9.44=535$ watts per cubic inch.
G. $f\rho=8\times 4.5\times 10^5=3.6\times 10^6$.
H. From Fig. 11, $PD/H_0^2=3.1\times 10^{-3}$.

$$H_0^2 = 535/3.1 \times 10^3 = 17.3 \times 10^4$$
$$H_0 = 415 \text{ oersteds.}$$

I. Assume a coil.
$l=12$ inches; $d=1.25$ inches; $N=42$; $N/l=3.5$; $A=1.23$ square inches.
From Fig. 13, $I/K_1=170$; $l/d=9.6$; $K_1=1$; $I=170$ amperes, coil current.
$\psi=61.4\times 10^{-4}$; $dw/dc=1.0/1.25=0.8$; $K_2=0.62$.
$E=61.4\times 10^{-4}\times 4.5\times 10^5\times 0.62=1710$ volts, coil voltage.
J. Rate of heating $=14.4\times(322-72)=3600=$ pounds per minute $\times\Delta t$.

From Fig. 12, total power required $=10{,}000$ watts.

K. The current of 170 amperes is beyond that obtainable from the usual ten-kilowatt oscillator. If the maximum possible current is assumed to be 110 amperes, the work coil must be partially tuned in order to obtain the benefits of high-circulating currents.

$$I_c=I_L-I_t=170-110=60.$$

Capacitance required $= C = I_c/\omega E$
$= 60/(2\pi \times 450{,}000) \times 1710) = 0.0125$ microfarad.
Kilovolt-amperes of capacitors $=1710\times 60\times 10^{-3}=103$ kilovolt-amperes.
L. Work circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt $=1710\times 170/10{,}000=29.0$.
M. Depth of penetration

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{\rho/\mu f}.$$

Since δ is proportional to $\sqrt{\rho}$, the value of ρ at maximum temperature will be used in order to make certain that the depth of penetration is at all times less than the wall thickness. See (24) in the appendix for an explanation of the formula for depth of penetration and the terms used therein.

Resistivity at maximum temperature

ρ hot $=\rho$ cold $(1+\alpha\Delta t)$

where

$\Delta t=$ temperature rise in degrees centigrade
$\alpha=$ temperature coefficient of resistivity $=0.003$ for brass
$\mu=1$

$$\rho \text{ hot} = 8[1 + (0.003 \times 250/1.8)] = 11.3 \text{ microhm-centimeters}$$

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{11.3/450{,}000} = 0.01 \text{ inch.}$$

The frequency is therefore of a high enough value so that the depth of penetration is less than half the wall thickness, as was required.

Alternate solutions are often desirable from the economic viewpoint. This application offers such an alternate solution. The foregoing figures indicate a generator current of 170 amperes which is a value obtainable from a 20-kilowatt generator without the aid of load capacitors or transformer. The power requirements were ten kilowatts, and therefore, by using two work circuits in series and a 20-kilowatt generator, the production rate can be doubled, and no accessories to the generator are necessary. The current, voltage (1710×2), and kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio satisfy the characteristics of a 20-kilowatt generator.

Example 6. Magnetic Hollow Cylinder

It will be assumed that, in order to temper 0.25-inch-diameter steel tubing with 0.025-inch wall thickness, it is necessary to heat this tubing to a temperature of 1000 degrees Fahrenheit, while the tubing is moving at a continuous rate of 100 feet per minute.

$\rho=20$ microhm-centimeters (at minimum temperature).
A. Volume to be heated per foot $=\pi/4[0.25^2-0.20^2]\times 12=0.212$ cubic inch.

B. Weight to be heated per foot $=0.212\times0.288=0.061$ pound per foot.

C. Rate of heating $=0.061\times100=6.1$ pounds per minute.

D. Thermal power $=1.76\times10^{-2}\times6.1\times0.125\times(1000-72)$ 12.4 kilowatts.

E. Volume in coil of solid cylinder of same outside diameter (assuming a coil 12 inches long).

$V=(\pi/4)\times(1/4)^2\times12=0.59$ cubic inch.

F. Power density $=12{,}400/0.59=21{,}000$ watts per cubic inch.

G. $f\rho=4.5\times10^5\times20=9\times10^6$; $PD\times d=21{,}000\times0.25=5.25\times10^3$.

H. From Fig. 9, $H_0=344$ oersteds.

I. Assume a coil

$l=12$ inches; $d=0.8$ inch; $N=36$; $N/l=3$; $A=0.5$ square inch.

From Fig. 13,

$l/d=15$; $K_1=1$; $I/K_1=164$; $I=164$ amperes, coil current.

$\psi=1.80\times10^{-3}$; $dw/dc=0.25/0.8=0.313$; $K_2=1$.

$E=1.80\times10^{-3}\times4.5\times10^5\times1=810$ volts, coil voltage.

J. Rate of heating $=6.1\times(1000-72)=5{,}650=$ pounds per minute $\times\Delta t$.

From Fig. 12, total power required $=16$ kilowatts.

K. Work circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt $=810\times164/16{,}000=8.3$.

L. Depth of penetration

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{\rho/\mu f}$$

$$\rho \text{ hot} = 20[1 + (0.003 \times 928/1.8)] = 50.6$$

$$\mu = 28{,}500/344 = 83.0$$

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{50.6/450{,}000\mu}$$

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{50.6/450{,}000 \times 83}$$

$$= 2.32 \times 10^{-3} \text{ inches.}$$

The depth of penetration is much less than the required half the wall thickness. Equations (30) and (37) in the appendix give the necessary explanation for the formulas for permeability and depth of penetration, respectively.

The foregoing figures satisfy the requirements of a 20-kilowatt generator, but they do not provide for full use of the power available from this 20-kilowatt unit. It would be desirable, therefore, to select a coil design to utilize the full rated current of 175 amperes and power of 20 kilowatts from a standard generator. The rate of production (100 feet per minute) thereby can be increased by the ratio 20/16 or to 125 feet per minute. Recalculation on this basis will give a coil design capable of fully loading the standard 20-kilowatt generator.

Example 7. Case Hardening

In this example we shall assume that a steel bearing 0.5 inch in diameter and one inch long is to be heated to a surface temperature of 1600 degrees Fahrenheit in order to case-harden to a depth of 0.03 inch.

A. Area to be hardened $=\pi dl=\pi\times0.5\times1=1.57$ square inches.

B. Power required $=2$ kilowatts per square inch $=1.57\times2=3.14$ kilowatts.

C. Volume of metal in coil $=\pi/4\times(0.5)^2\times1=0.196$ cubic inch.

D. Power density $=3140/0.196=16{,}000$ watts per cubic inch.

E. $H_0=720$ (from analysis in appendix (50)).

F. Assume a coil

$N=2$; $l=1$ inch; $N/l=2$; $d=0.75$ inch; $A=\pi/4\times0.75^2=0.44$ square inch.

From Fig. 13,

$I/K_1=514$; $l/d=1/0.75=1.34$; $K_1=1.35$.

$I=1.35\times514=694$ amperes, coil current; $\psi=1.81\times10^{-4}$.

$dw/dc=0.5/0.75=0.665$; $K_2=0.78$; $E=1.81\times10^{-4}\times4.5\times10^5\times0.78=63.5$ volts, coil voltage.

G. Power loss in work coil (see (9))

$$W_c = 1.40(dc/dw)\sqrt{(\rho c/\rho w)}\,W_w; \quad W_c = 1.40 \times 0.75/0.5\sqrt{2.1/20} \times 3.14 = 2.12 \text{ kilowatts.}$$

Total power required $=3.14+2.12=5.26$ kilowatts.

H. Load circuit kilovolt-amperes per kilowatt $=63.5\times694/5260=8.3$.

I. Depth of penetration

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{\rho/\mu f} \qquad \mu = 28{,}500/H_0 = 28{,}500/720 = 39.5.$$

Equations (30) and (37) in the appendix give the necessary explanation for the formulas for permeability and depth of penetration, respectively.

$$\rho \text{ hot} = 20[(1 + 0.003 \times 1528)/1.8] = 71.$$

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{71/39.5 \times 450{,}000}$$

$$= 3.96 \times 10^{-3} \text{ inches.}$$

The frequency used is therefore high enough so that the depth of penetration is less than half the depth of case desired.

The coil current is considerably beyond a value practically obtainable from an oscillator rated at five- or ten-kilowatt output. The load-circuit kilovolt-amperes-per-kilowatt ratio and the current requirements indicate that a current transformer is an ideal solution.

The total power requirements given in *G* do not include transformer losses. To accomplish this heating job, it is therefore necessary to use a ten-kilowatt generator to provide the relatively high current-transformer losses in addition to work-circuit power. There will be a margin of safety if a 10-kilowatt generator is employed, which by proper design of the work circuit can be used to increase the kilowatt per square inch into the work and thereby reduce the heating time.

Appendix

The theoretical basis from which the equations used were derived, together with the derivation of these equations, will be treated briefly in this section.

When any conductor is placed in a varying magnetic

field, currents are induced in the conductor as in a transformer secondary winding. Since the conductor has definite resistivity, heat is generated by the induced currents. This principle is known as induction heating. The correct frequency to be used depends upon the size and electrical properties of the piece to be heated. This frequency may vary from 60 cycles or less for large objects to several hundred kilocycles for case hardening and heating of small objects.

In general, magnetic properties make iron and steel below the Curie point much easier to heat than the other metals. The Curie point, approximately 1300 degrees Fahrenheit, is that temperature above which iron loses its magnetic properties. Materials of low resistivity, such as aluminum and copper, are more difficult to heat than the poorer conductors.

Nearly any problem in the induction-heating field can be resolved into that of heating either a cylinder or strip of magnetic or nonmagnetic material. If a hollow cylinder is to be heated, satisfactory results require that the depth of current penetration caused by "skin effect" be less than the wall thickness of the cylinder, which sets a lower limit to the frequency.

It has been shown[2] that power loss in a cylinder may be represented as

$$P = \frac{(H_0')^2 \rho m}{0.08\pi 2a} \times \left\{ \frac{\text{ber}\,(ma)\,\text{ber}'\,(ma) + \text{bei}\,(ma)\,\text{bei}'\,(ma)}{\text{ber}^2\,(ma) + \text{bei}^2\,(ma)} \right\} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter} \tag{16}$$

where

$$ma = a\sqrt{8\pi^2 \mu f \times 10^{-9}/\rho} \tag{17}$$

f = frequency (cycles per second)
ρ = resistivity (ohm-centimeters)
a = radius of cylinder (centimeters)
μ = permeability.

Let

$$G(ma) = \frac{1}{ma} \times \frac{\text{ber}\,(ma)\,\text{ber}'\,(ma) + \text{bei}\,(ma)\,\text{bei}'\,(ma)}{\text{ber}^2\,(ma) + \text{bei}^2\,(ma)}. \tag{18}$$

Then

$$P = \frac{(H_0')^2 \rho m^2}{0.08\pi^2} \frac{1}{ma} \times \frac{\text{ber}\,(ma)\,\text{ber}'\,(ma) + \text{bei}\,(ma)\,\text{bei}'\,(ma)}{\text{ber}^2\,(ma) + \text{bei}^2\,(ma)}$$

$$= (H_0')^2 \rho \frac{(8\pi^2 \mu f \times 10^{-9})}{0.08\pi^2 \rho} G(ma)$$

$$= \mu (H_0')^2 f G(ma) \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter} \tag{19}$$

where H_0' = root-mean-square magnetizing force. If H_0 = peak magnetizing force, then $H_0 = \sqrt{2}\, H_0'$ and

$$P = 1/2 \mu H_0^2 f G(ma) \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter.} \tag{20}$$

[2] N. W. McLachlan, "Bessel Functions for Engineers," Oxford University Press, New York, N. Y., 1943, chapter 9.

Power density will be maximum for a given frequency when the function $G(ma)$ is maximum. This occurs with a value of $(ma) \cong 3$. Operation is unstable with values of (ma) less than 3, and the minimum frequency is taken to be that frequency which makes $(ma) = 3$. This frequency is not critical and any frequency for which $(ma) \geqq 3$, will be satisfactory, providing current and voltage limitations in the work coil are not exceeded. An increased frequency lowers the power factor of the coil, but increases the power-input-to-magnetizing-force ratio. The highest possible ratio is desired without exceeding current or voltage limitations. The function $G(ma)$ may be replaced with very little inaccuracy when $(ma) \geqq 10$ by

$$G(ma) = 1/ma\sqrt{2} \tag{21}$$

and for practical purposes when $(ma) \geqq 3$. Power density therefore simplifies to

$$P = (1/2ma\sqrt{2}) \mu H_0^2 f \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter.} \tag{22}$$

For a coil long with respect to its diameter,

$$H_0 = (0.4\pi NI/l)\sqrt{2} \text{ oersteds} \tag{23}$$

where NI/l = ampere turns per centimeter of the coil. If the diameter of the coil is comparable to its length, the value given above for H_0 is modified by the factor K_1, plotted in Fig. 11.

The same relationships are valid for a hollow cylinder, providing the depth of penetration of current is less than the wall thickness.

Effective depth of current penetration is given as

$$\delta = 5033\sqrt{\rho/\mu f} \text{ centimeters} \tag{24}$$

where ρ = resistivity in ohm-centimeters. The minimum frequency for hollow cylinder has been taken arbitrarily as twice the frequency which would produce a depth of penetration equal to the wall thickness.

The power input to a flat strip is given as

$$P = 1/2 \mu H_0^2 f G(K_s t) \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter} \tag{25}$$

where

$$K_s t = t\sqrt{4\pi^2 \mu f \times 10^{-9}/\rho} \tag{26}$$

t = thickness of strip (centimeters)
ρ = resistivity (ohm-centimeters).

$$G(K_s t) = \frac{1}{2K_s t} \frac{\sinh\,(K_s t) - \sin\,(K_s t)}{\cosh\,(K_s t) + \cos\,(K_s t)}. \tag{27}$$

The function $G(K_s t)$ has a maximum value of $K_s t \cong 3$, as in the case of the cylinder. For practical purposes when

$$K_s t \geqq 3 \tag{28}$$

$G(K_s t)$ may be replaced by $1/2K_s t$. In this case, the power-input equation reduces to

$$P = (1/4K_s t) \mu H_0^2 f \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter.} \tag{29}$$

These equations are valid for magnetic materials, provided that μ remains constant or varies according to some mathematical relationship. Since μ is ordinarily not constant and does not have a regular variation, approximation is necessary. If a constant value of μ,

based on empirical and theoretical considerations and equal to

$$1.78\sqrt{Bm/H_0} \tag{30}$$

is used, where Bm is the saturation flux density of iron and is approximately equal to 16,000 gausses, the equation will give reasonably accurate results, for both strip and cylinder.

Equations (2) through (7) and (10) through (14) are derived as follows: General equation for power input to a cylinder

$$PD = 1/2\mu H_0^2 G(ma)f \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter}$$
$$= 8.2 \times 10^{-7}\mu f G(ma) H_0^2 \text{ watts per cubic inch} \tag{31}$$

$$ma = a\sqrt{8\pi^2\mu f \times 10^{-9}/\rho}$$
$$= 0.356\sqrt{(\mu f/\rho)}d \tag{32}$$

where d = diameter of cylinder in inches
ρ = resistivity in microhm-centimeters.

Let

$$G(ma) = 1/ma\sqrt{2}$$
$$PD = 8.2H_0^2\mu f\sqrt{\rho}\times 10^{-7}/\sqrt{2}\times 0.356d\sqrt{\mu f}$$
$$= (16.3H_0^2/d)\sqrt{\mu f\rho}\times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic inch.} \tag{33}$$

Power input to a magnetic cylinder

$$\mu = 1.78 \times 16{,}000/H_0 = 28{,}500/H_0.$$
$$PD = (16.3/d)\sqrt{\rho f}\sqrt{(28{,}500/H_0)}H_0^2 \times 10^{-7}$$
$$= (2.75 \times 10^{-4}/d)\sqrt{\rho f}\, H_0^{3/2}. \tag{2}$$

Power input to a nonmagnetic cylinder ($\mu = 1$)

$$PD = (1.63/d)\sqrt{\rho f}\, H_0^2 \times 10^{-6}. \tag{4}$$

General equation for power input to a strip

$$PD = 1/2\mu H_0^2 f G(K_s t) \times 10^{-7} \text{ watts per cubic centimeter}$$
$$= 8.2 \times 10^{-7}\mu f G(K_s t) H_0^2 \text{ watts per cubic inch.} \tag{34}$$

$$K_s t = t\sqrt{4(\pi)^2\mu f \times 10^{-9}/\rho}$$
$$= 0.505t\sqrt{\mu f/\rho} \tag{35}$$

where t = strip thickness in inches
ρ = resistivity in microhm-centimeters.

Let

$$G(K_s t) = 1/2K_s t$$
$$PD = 8.2H_0^2\mu f\sqrt{\rho} \times 10^{-7}/2 \times 0.505t\sqrt{\mu f}$$
$$= 8.15H_0^2\sqrt{\mu f\rho} \times 10^{-7}/t \text{ watts per cubic inch.} \tag{36}$$

Power input to a magnetic strip

$$\mu = 28{,}500/H_0$$
$$PD = 8.15/t\sqrt{f\rho}\sqrt{(28{,}500/H_0)}H_0^2 \times 10^{-7}$$
$$= 1.37 \times 10^{-4}\sqrt{f\rho}\, H_0^{3/2}/t \text{ watts per cubic inch.} \tag{3}$$

Power input to a nonmagnetic strip ($\mu = 1$)

$$PD = 8.15 \times 10^{-7}\sqrt{f\rho}\, H_0^2/t \text{ watts per cubic inch.} \tag{5}$$

Minimum frequency for heating a solid cylinder

$$ma = 0.356d\sqrt{\mu f/\rho}.$$

Let $ma = 3$; then $0.356\sqrt{\mu f/\rho} = 3$; $\mu f = 71\rho/d^2$. (10)

Minimum frequency for heating a strip

$$K_s t = 0.505t\sqrt{\mu f/\rho}.$$

Let $K_s t = 3$; then $0.505t\sqrt{\mu f/\rho} = 3$

$$\mu f = 35.2(\rho/t^2). \tag{13}$$

Magnetic permeability at minimum frequency for steel cylinder or strip below Curie point

$$PD = 8.2 \times 10^{-7}\mu f G(ma) H_0^2$$
$$= 8.2 \times 10^{-7}\mu f G(K_s t) H_0^2.$$

At minimum frequency

$$ma = 3$$
$$K_s t = 3$$
$$G(ma) = G(K_s t) = 0.186$$
$$PD = 1.52 \times 10^{-7}\mu f H_0^2$$
$$\mu = 28{,}500/H_0; \quad H_0 = 28{,}500/\mu$$
$$PD = 1.52 \times 10^{-7}(\mu f) \times (28{,}500/\mu)^2$$
$$\mu = \sqrt{(123/PD)\mu f}. \tag{14}$$

Minimum frequency for heating a hollow magnetic cylinder

$$\delta = 5033\sqrt{\rho/\mu f} \text{ centimeters}$$
$$= 1.98\sqrt{\rho/\mu f} \text{ inches} \tag{37}$$

where ρ = resistivity in microhm-centimeters

$$\mu f = (1.98^2/\delta^2)\rho.$$

Let $\delta = t$ = wall thickness of cylinder.

Let

$$f^1 = 2f \tag{38}$$
$$f^1 = 1.98^2 \times 2\rho/\mu t^2; \quad \mu = 28{,}500/H_0$$
$$= 1.98^2 \times 2\rho H_0/28{,}500t^2$$
$$PD = 2.75 \times 10^{-4}\sqrt{f'\rho}\, H_0^{3/2}/d$$
$$H_o = [(3.64PD \times d \times 10^3)/\sqrt{f'\rho}]^{2/3} \tag{2}$$
$$f' = \frac{1.98^2 \times 2\rho}{28{,}500t^2}\left[\frac{3.64PD \times d \times 10^3}{\sqrt{f'\rho}}\right]^{2/3}$$
$$f^1 = \frac{1.98^2 \times 2\rho}{28{,}500t^2}\left[\frac{PD \times d \times 10^{+4}}{2.75\sqrt{f'\rho}}\right]^{2/3}$$
$$f^1 = 0.129[(PD \times d \times \rho)/t^3]^{1/2}. \tag{11}$$

Minimum frequency for heating a hollow nonmagnetic cylinder

$$\delta = 1.98\sqrt{\rho/f}.$$

Let

$$\delta = t$$
$$f^1 = 2f$$
$$t^2 = 1.98^2(2\rho/2f) = 1.98^2(2\rho/f')$$
$$f^1 = (7.75\rho/t^2). \tag{12}$$

Magnetizing force for case hardening of a cylinder.

Let

E_1 = energy input to work while it is magnetic
E_2 = energy input to work when it passes the Curie point
E_0 = total energy input to the work
P_1 = power input in watts while magnetic
P_2 = power input in watts when nonmagnetic
t_1 = time material is magnetic
t_2 = time material is nonmagnetic

$$PD = (K_1 H_0^2\sqrt{\mu f\rho})/d \text{ watts per cubic inch}$$

$$P/A = K_2H_0^2\sqrt{\mu f\rho} \text{ watts per square inch of surface area}$$
$$P_1/\pi dl = K_2H_0^2\sqrt{\mu f\rho}$$
$$P_2/\pi dl = K_2 \quad H_0^2\sqrt{f\rho}\ (\mu = 1)$$
$$P_1/P_2 = \sqrt{\mu}\ (\text{for } H_{01} = H_{02}) \tag{39}$$
$$E_1 = (13/16)E_0$$
$$E_2 = (3/16)E_0 \tag{40}$$
$$E_0 = 2(t_1 + t_2)\pi dl\ (2 \text{ kilowatts per square inch} \tag{41}$$
$$\times \text{ area} \times \text{ time}) \tag{42}$$
$$E_1 = P_1t_1 = (13/16) \times 2(t_1 + t_2)\pi dl \tag{43}$$
$$E_2 = P_2t_2 = (3/16) \times 2(t_1 + t_2)\pi dl \tag{44}$$
$$P_2 = P_1/\sqrt{\mu}.$$

If we solve (39), (43), and (44),

$$t_2/t_1 = 3/13\sqrt{\mu} \tag{45}$$
$$P_1t_1 + P_2t_2 = P_{\text{eff}}(t_1 + t_2) \tag{46}$$
$$P_1t_1 + (P_1/\sqrt{\mu}) \times (3/13)\sqrt{\mu}\, t_1 = (2t_1 + t_2)\pi dl \tag{47}$$
$$P_1 = 1.63\pi dl[(3/13)\sqrt{\mu} + 1] \tag{48}$$
$$\frac{P_1}{\text{Volume}} = PD = \frac{2.75 \times 10^{-7}\sqrt{f\rho}H_0^{3/2}}{d} = \frac{4P_1}{\pi d^2 l} \tag{49}$$
$$4 \times \left[\frac{1.63\pi dl(3/13\sqrt{\mu} + 1)}{\pi d^2 l}\right] = \frac{2.75 \times 10^{-4}\sqrt{f\rho}\, H_0^{3/2}}{d}.$$

Let

$$f = 450 \text{ kilocycles}$$
$$\rho = 20 \text{ microhm-centimeters}$$
$$\sqrt{f\rho} = 3 \times 10^3$$

$$H_0^2 - 7.9 \times 10^3\sqrt{H} - 3.08 \times 10^5 = 0$$
$$H_0 = 720. \tag{50}$$

Coil voltage and current as a function of magnetizing force

$$L = (N\phi/1) \times 10^{-8} = (NHA/I) \times 10^{-8} \tag{51}$$
$$E = \omega LI = \omega NH_0A \times 10^{-8}$$

where H_0 = peak magnetizing force in oersteds

$$\omega = 2\pi f$$
$$E = (H_0/\sqrt{2}) \times 2(\pi fNA \times 10^{-8}), \text{ root-mean-square volts, for an air-core solenoid}$$

where A = area in square centimeters

$$E = H_0(2.86 \times 10^{-7}fNAK_2) \tag{6}$$

where E = root-mean-square volts for coil with a metal core

A = area of coil in square inches

$$I = H_0[(l/0.4\pi N)K_1]$$

where l = length of coil in centimeters

I = peak current in amperes

$$I = H_0(2.54l/0.4\pi\sqrt{2}\ N)K_1 = H_0 \times [1.43(l/N)K_1] \tag{7}$$

where I = root-mean-square current in amperes

l = length of coil in inches.

Bibliography

F. E. Terman, "Radio Engineers' Handbook," McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1943, section 6.

C. P. Steinmetz, "Transient Phenomena and Oscillations," McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1920, chapters 6 and 7.

A 60-Kilowatt High-Frequency Transoceanic-Radiotelephone Amplifier*

C. F. P. ROSE†, SENIOR MEMBER, I.R.E.

Summary—**Herein is described a high-frequency radio amplifier recently developed for the transoceanic-telephone facilities of the Bell System at Lawrenceville, N. J. In general, the amplifier is capable of delivering 60 kilowatts of peak envelope power when excited from a 2-kilowatt radio-frequency source. It is designed to operate as a "class B" amplifier for transmitting either single-channel double-sideband or twin-channel single-sideband types of transmission. Features are described which permit rapid frequency-changing technique from any preassigned frequency to another lying anywhere within the spectrum of 4.5 to 22 megacycles.**

I. Introduction

THERE HAVE been increasing demands for transoceanic high-frequency two-way radiotelephone circuits since such a circuit was first initiated by the American Telephone and Telegraph Company in 1928. A step toward satisfying the early demands was taken in June, 1929, when two transatlantic high-frequency transmitters were inaugurated at Lawrenceville, N. J.[1] By 1935 the system had expanded from transatlantic to transoceanic in scope. The overseas traffic carried by the high-frequency transmitting stations at Lawrenceville, Ocean Gate, N. J., and Dixon, California, was being handled with seven single-channel, double-sideband transmitter units. Experiments were conducted proving the merits of a single-sideband system as a replacement of the double-sideband type of transmission.[2] In 1938, newly installed input equipment for three transmitters provided transmission on either a double- or single-sideband basis.[3] During 1939, the traffic capacity was augmented by modifications in the input equipment which permitted handling

* Decimal classification: R355.7. Original manuscript received by the Institute, February 21, 1945.

† Bell Telephone Laboratories, Inc., New York, N. Y.

[1] "Transatlantic short-wave radio," *Bell Lab. Rec.*, vol. 7, pp. 481–518; August, 1929.

[2] F. A. Polkinghorn and N. F. Schlaack, "A single-side-band short-wave system for transatlantic telephony," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 23, pp. 701–718; July, 1935.

[3] A. A. Oswald, "A short-wave single-side-band radiotelephone system," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 26, pp. 1431–1454; December, 1938.

twin-channel single-sideband transmission, wherein the second channel was obtained by utilizing the other sideband.

Improvements in the input equipment comprising the Western Electric D-156000 radio transmitter embodied not only provision for twin-channel single-sideband and single-channel double-sideband transmission, but also minimized the operations required for changing frequencies dictated by diurnal variations in transmission paths.[4] The existing two-stage radio-frequency power amplifier did not lend itself readily to modifications enabling rapid frequency-changing technique. Consequently, a program was followed for the development of a new high-power amplifier to be used in conjunction with the D-156000 radio transmitter. The program culminated in June, 1942, when the Western Electric D-158974 radio amplifier herein described was turned over to traffic at Lawrenceville, N. J.

II. Specifications and Requirements

In contrast with the amplifiers installed at Lawrenceville, in 1929, the design specifications for this equipment briefly encompassed the following:

1. The floor area required for the control unit, amplifier unit, and high-voltage rectifier unit should be reduced to a minimum. Toward this end rotating machinery must be eliminated except for the pumps and blowers for the water-cooling system, and the high-voltage rectifier shall employ mercury-vapor tubes instead of water-cooled high-vacuum tubes.
2. The costs for construction, operation, and maintenance must be minimized and only those improvements incorporated which insure better dependability, stability, simplicity, and quality of service.
3. The amplifier must meet the following requirements:
   (a) It must deliver 60 kilowatts of peak envelope radio-frequency power into essentially a resistive load impedance lying anywhere within the range of 250 to 800 ohms.
   (b) It must operate at any frequency within the range of 4.5 to 22 megacycles and be capable of continuous operation.
   (c) The signal-to-distortion ratio must be equal to or greater than 25 decibels, and the signal-to-noise ratio at least 45 decibels, to satisfy the requirements for double-sideband transmission or single-sideband twin-channel operation.
   (d) There must be provisions for rapid frequency changes; i.e., the time and personnel required to change from one frequency assignment to another must be reduced to a minimum.
   (e) A safety system must prevent the personnel from entering any compartment until all voltages have been removed and capacitors discharged.

[4] K. L. King, "A twin-channel single-side-band radio transmitter," *Bell Lab. Rec.*, vol. 19, pp. 202–205; March, 1941.

III. Description

To minimize construction and maintenance costs, it was desirable to limit the amplifier to a single stage and locate as much of its power supply as possible outdoors. As shown in Fig. 1, the indoor equipment of the D-158974 radio amplifier comprises three units bolted together and all mounted on a common-channel-iron

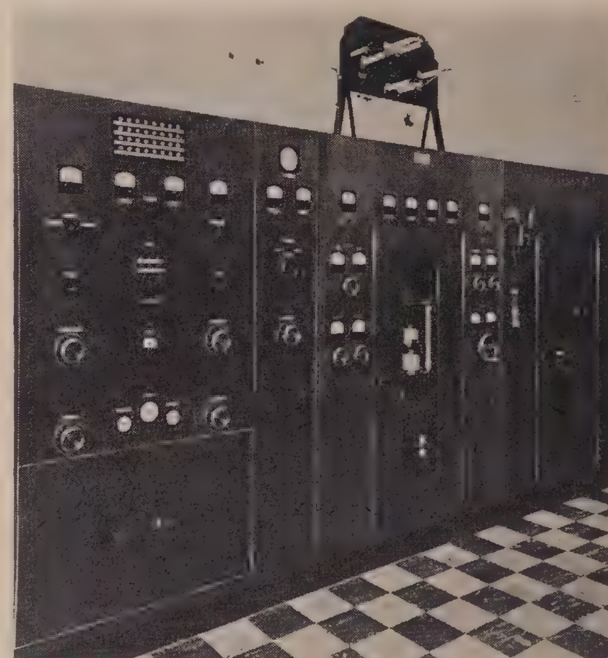


Fig. 1—Western Electric D-158974 radio amplifier.

base. These three units cover a floor space of 4 feet by 15 feet, as compared with at least triple this area previously required for comparable equipment. Each unit measures 4 feet deep, 5 feet wide, and 7 feet high. They are constructed of 1/16-inch sheet steel welded to a rectangular steel-tube frame which affords adequate shielding without resorting to the previous and more costly construction involving brass angle and aluminum sheet. The unit on the left houses the control switches and relays for the system, grid-bias rectifier and associated filter, filament controls, two porcelain coils for insulation in the water-cooling system, and indicating lamps for the entire system. The central unit houses the amplifier proper, which is discussed in detail later. The unit on the right houses the six Western Electric Type 255B mercury-vapor rectifier tubes connected in a three-phase, bridge-type, high-voltage rectifier circuit. The control for the high-voltage grounding switch is located in the upper left corner of this unit. This switch is mechanically connected to Cory interlocks in such a way as to prevent entrance to any compartment until all high voltage is removed and buses have been

grounded. A second line of protection is provided by means of door switches which will open the oil circuit breaker if a lock fails and a compartment door is opened. High voltage cannot be reapplied until all doors have been closed and the grounding switch removed from the grounded position.

All electrical connections, except to the antenna transmission line, enter through the floor. The two radio-frequency output leads pass through a pyrex glass panel in the top of the amplifier unit to an external antenna-transmission-line switch. Intercabinet wiring is run in conduit through the sides of the cabinets.

There are blowers in the control and rectifier compartments which circulate filtered air through all three compartments. The only other rotating machines in the system are the pumps and fans associated with the water-cooling system. These are located in other sections of the building and are normally unattended. A predetermined water temperature must be attained before the cooling fans operate. Thereafter, thermostats automatically control the number of fans required in accordance with the ambient temperature and the power dissipated.

The amplifier employs four Western Electric Company Type 340A single-ended, 25-kilowatt, water-cooled vacuum tubes connected in a push-pull bridge-neutralized circuit. The two tubes on one side of the circuit are connected in parallel. The operating characteristics for these tubes are similar to the vacuum tubes used in early models of Western Electric 50-kilowatt broadcast transmitters. Excessive heating of the copper-glass grid seal due to radio-frequency losses was eliminated by resorting to air cooling of the seal.

At first, a single-stage amplifier appeared impracticable because the basic radio-frequency supply was limited to the relatively low 2-kilowatt peak output of the Western Electric type D-156000 radio transmitter. Actually, with sufficient input power, the amplifier has a capacity of 80 to 100 kilowatts of radio-frequency peak envelope power. However, the output requirement of 60 kilowatts establishes a power gain of 15 decibels for a single-stage "class B" amplifier. This is somewhat more gain than that found in average practice, but it was satisfactorily realized after the development of a suitable grid circuit employing a balanced pi-type network.

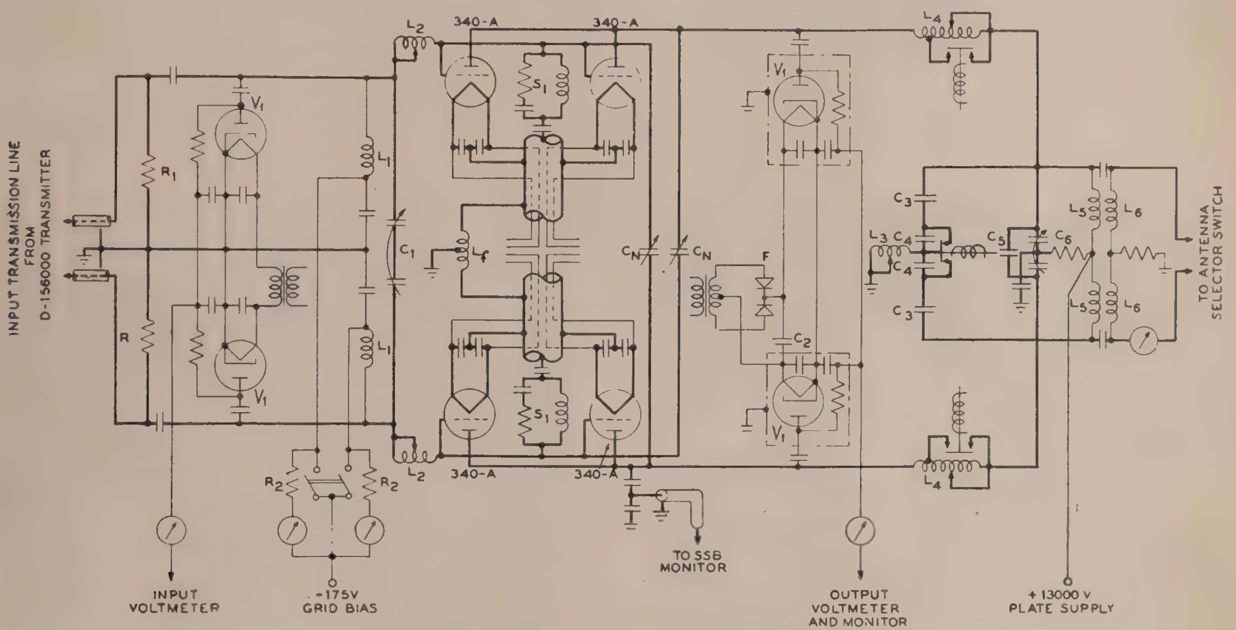


Fig. 2—Western Electric D-158974 radio amplifier, partial schematic.

A schematic of the amplifier is given in Fig. 2. The grid circuit is tuned by means of two continuously variable series inductive elements designated as L_2 in the schematic. These inductances are known as Western Electric Type 13-A tuning coils. A roller, contacting progressive turns, short-circuits the unwanted turns as it advances on its shaft from one end of the coil to the other. A variable capacitance C_1 is used as the shunt element at the sending end of the network to accommodate varying grid input impedances resulting from frequency changes. Resistors R_1 also shunt the sending end of the network and serve a twofold purpose. They provide a termination for the 200-ohm balanced concentric input transmission line. In addition, they provide a swamping effect for the varying grid input resistance resulting from positive grid excitation.

Resistors R_2 are incorporated, which are normally short-circuited out, but for test purposes can be connected in series with the direct-current grid-bias path when the plate voltage is not applied. This permits using the amplifier tubes as peak voltmeters, thereby determining the voltage applied to the actual grid within the tube envelope. The ratio of this voltage to the voltage developed across the terminus of the coaxial input transmission line determines the voltage step up in the

grid circuit. For normal operation, a step up of approximately 2.2 is required. The push-pull peak voltage developed on the active grids at maximum peak envelope power approximates 2300 volts, and the grids in each bank of tubes are driven about 1000 volts positive.

Neutralization is accomplished by means of two oil-filled variable capacitors, C_N. These capacitors connect the plates in one bank of tubes to the grids of the other. However, an optimum amount of inductance L_f is added between the filaments of the tubes on opposite sides of the push-pull amplifier to perform a function similar to that described by other manufacturers.[5] This provides greater stability and eliminates the necessity for changing the neutralizing capacitor settings to cover the frequency range. The value of this inductance is dictated by the inherent plate-grid, plate-filament interelectrode capacitance and the inherent grid inductance. The relationship requires that the ratio of plate-grid to plate-filament capacitance be equal to the ratio of total filament inductance to inherent grid inductance. This may be expressed $C_{pg}/C_{pf}=L_f/L_g$, wherein the subscripts p, f, and g refer to the plate, filament, and grid elements of the vacuum tubes.

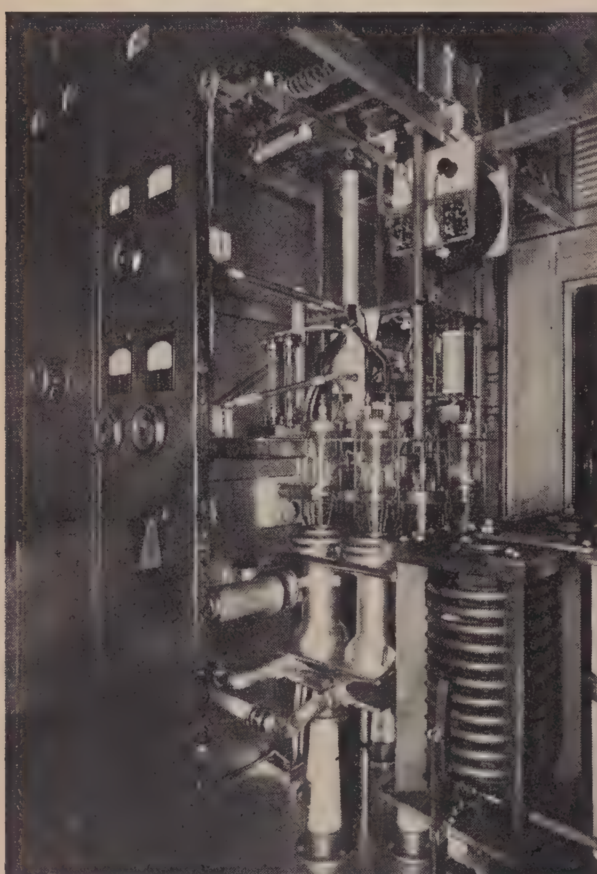


Fig. 3—Interior of radio amplifier.

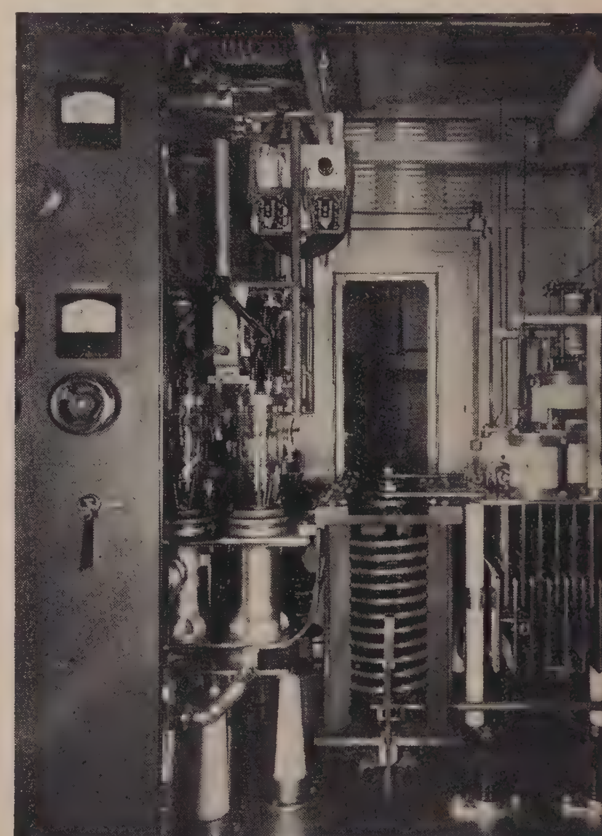


Fig. 4—Interior of radio amplifier.

The additional inductance L_f, inserted in the filament path, permits raising the radio-frequency filament voltage with respect to ground in an amount equal to that developed at its conjugate point located at the active grid. This was accomplished by threading the leads which carry the power for the filaments in each bank of two tubes within a copper pipe approximately 1 foot in length. The filament power leads are by-passed to the copper pipe at the end opposite the power supply. The other ends of the pipes, where the filament leads emerge, are connected together by means of a short conductor which provides the inductance L_f. An optimum point approximating the midpoint of this conductor is connected to ground.

In addition to the bridge type of neutralization in the amplifier, two suppression circuits are incorporated in the design. One is a 68-megacycle suppression circuit and the other is an harmonic suppression circuit.

The 68-megacycle suppression circuit S_1 is bridged from each grid circuit to its corresponding filament circuit. Its purpose is to eliminate spurious oscillations due to resonance within the bridge circuit. It is a high-pass filter series-resonated for 68 megacycles. A resistive component is capacitively coupled to this resonant circuit to broaden the characteristic impedance for the operating frequencies.

[5] P. J. H. A. Nordlohne, "The experimental short wave broadcasting station PCJ," *Phillips Transmitting News*, vol. 5, pp. 1–15; April, 1938.

The harmonic-suppression circuit L_3, C_{3-4} is designed to suppress the second-harmonic voltage from each side of the output transmission line to ground. It consists of a capacitance bridged from each output lead to one terminal of a common variable inductance, the other terminal of which is connected to ground. Each capacitance comprises two series capacitors, C_3 and C_4, one being short-circuited at the lower frequencies by a solenoid-operated switch.

The pi-type output circuit is tuned by means of continuously variable series-inductive elements L_4, and coupling is provided by means of the capacitor C_6. As in the case of the inductances used in the grid circuit, the unused end of each plate coil is short-circuited through the sliding contact in order to prevent parasitic voltages from being developed when only a few turns are actively in the circuit. An additional short circuit in the unused portion of the plate-tuning coils is necessary to overcome self-resonant conditions at frequencies within the operating spectrum. This is accomplished automatically by means of solenoid-operated switches. A commutator is mounted on the controls for these coils, which opens or closes the electrical circuit to the solenoids as the movable contact passes a given point on the coil.

The radio-frequency chokes L_6, connected between the transmission line and ground, provide a short circuit for the plate voltage in the event that a transmission-line stopping capacitor fails, thereby preventing high direct-current voltage from being applied to the antenna. These chokes have very suitable characteristics over the frequency range of 4.5 to 22 megacycles. This is accomplished by using a large ratio of axial length to diameter.

The interior view, Fig. 3, is directed primarily toward the elements of the grid circuit. Particular features here illustrated are the glass-enclosed grid-loading resistors, the grid-tuning coils, the ducts carrying air for cooling the tube envelope at the grid seals, the configuration of elements concerning the filament circuit, the ceramic piping associated with the water-cooling system, and a plate-monitoring diode.

Fig. 4 shows the elements constituting the output circuit. The continuously variable feature of the plate tuning coils presented a special contact problem. For this reason the coils are water-cooled. They consist of eleven turns of $\frac{3}{4}$-inch outside-diameter copper tubing having a mean diameter of 9.5 inches. The turns are held in position by four mycalex insulating supports that are fastened to the upper and lower insulating plates. The spacing of turns is more than sufficient to withstand an approximate maximum of 400 root-mean-square radio-frequency volts per turn. About one gallon of water per minute is by-passed around each bank of tubes to cool each plate tuning coil. To do this, both inlet and outlet water connections for either coil must be made at its associated plate assembly. This precludes a direct metallic water connection from the two ends of the coil since it results in short-circuiting the coil. A radio-frequency isolating section of ceramic piping might be inserted in either the inlet or outlet water connection to a coil, but this becomes cumbersome. To avoid this, a copper tubing of $\frac{7}{16}$-inch outside diameter is threaded inside the $\frac{3}{4}$-inch outside-diameter copper-tubing helix. This design provides inlet and outlet water paths at the end of the coil which is electrically connected to the tube jackets. At the other end of the coil an internal re-entrant series water connection is provided between the inner and outer tubings. By this design, the cooling water flows in, around the $\frac{7}{16}$-inch inner tubing, and out through it. Two 28-inch lengths of ceramic pipes are necessary for the inlet and outlet water paths supplying a tube bank and its associated plate-tuning coil. These insulating pipe sections provide radio-frequency insulation for the entire plate assembly, while the ceramic-hose coil in the control unit provides a high-resistance direct-current path from the plate assembly and coil to ground. The sliding contact, which is under pressure on each coil, will carry approximately 150 amperes of circulatory current. This contact rotates on the water-cooled axial shaft. A coaxial mycalex housing rotates the contact, and the axial thrust is derived from the pitch of the coil turns. The driving mechanism to each coil is adjustable through universal-jointed phenol shafting connected to the large hand wheel on the front of the cabinet. Differential gearing permits simultaneous adjustment of both coils when the hand wheel is in its normal position. When the hand wheel is pulled out, the shaft to the rear coil is disengaged and the front coil may be adjusted independently. This adjustment allows compensation for dissymmetries which may develop within the amplifier or in its external load circuit.

The output coupling capacitor C_6, also shown in Fig. 4, is of unique mechanical design involving balanced construction. The two sets of stator plates are connected to the transmission line, while the common rotor plates are maintained at radio-frequency ground potential. These movable plates are counter-weighted, and raised or lowered by means of a flexible cable running over a drum and controlled by a hand wheel on the front of the cabinet. Arrangements are provided so that additional capacitance in the form of vacuum capacitors C_5 may be added in parallel to the coupling capacitor as required to cover the load-impedance range of 250 to 800 ohms.

The continuously variable tuning features of the grid and plate circuits expedite rapid frequency changes. Furthermore, the refinement in the bridge type of neutralizing circuit previously mentioned also facilitates rapid frequency changes since the neutralizing capacitors are essentially fixed as a function of frequency. The system permits frequency changes without the necessity of removing grid or plate direct-current supply voltages. With the former two-stage amplifier, two men required six minutes to change from one frequency assignment to another. Now, one man can make the change in three minutes. This represents not only a

saving in operating cost but also a decrease in lost circuit time.

Diodes V_1 are employed as peak voltmeters for measuring the voltages developed across the input and output transmission lines. The grid voltmeters are coupled to the circuit through large-capacitance stopping capacitors, while those in the output are coupled by means of capacitance dividers. The output rectifying devices serve as monitors whereby signal-to-noise and signal-to-distortion measurements may be made when using double-sideband transmission. They also provide a means for measuring signal-to-noise ratios for single-sideband transmission. In order that the noise in these monitors shall not interfere to any marked extent in amplifier-noise measurements, the cathodes of the tubes in the plate monitors are heated by direct current supplied from a small selenium rectifier F. In addition, some filtering action is obtained by an electrolytic capacitor C_2 connected across the heater elements.

The measurements of signal-to-noise and signal-to-distortion ratios meet the requirement of 45 decibels and 25 decibels, respectively. The term "signal," as herein used, refers to one of two frequencies of equal amplitude. Each frequency is adjusted to give half the permissible peak-sideband amplitude. The method by which these noise and distortion measurements are made is described in detail in Oswald's paper.[3]

IV. Power Supply

The filament current for the four amplifier tubes is supplied through four transformers arranged in two parallel-connected groups. Means are provided for adjusting and observing the three-phase wye and delta voltages applied to the primaries of the two groups of Scott-connected transformers. This allows the filament voltages to be adjusted independently, and at the same time insures quadrature phasing for the two tubes in a given bank of the push-pull circuit. If the wye voltages are unbalanced by greater than 4 per cent it manifests itself as an undesirable second-harmonic power-supply modulation. The secondaries of the transformer are accurately center-tapped to insure balanced voltages for each half of a filament with respect to ground, which minimizes the 60-cycle power-supply modulation. Series reactors are provided in the primary circuit to prevent the initial surge of current from rising above a specified value when power is applied to cold tubes. By means of a contactor, these reactors are short-circuited after the resistance of the tube filaments reaches a predetermined value.

The grid-bias voltage is supplied from a single-phase full-wave rectifier which uses two Western Electric Type 267B mercury-vapor rectifier tubes. The output voltage is controlled by means of a variac. When the voltage is changed, the load current is kept constant by means of a variable load resistance which is connected mechanically to the control of the variac. The voltage may be adjusted over the range from -400 to $+200$ volts. This wide range in voltage is provided for testing new tubes, and for measuring the voltage-transformation ratios of the grid circuit. The grid bias for normal "class B" operation is -175 volts.

The power-supply equipment located outdoors is illustrated in Fig. 5. On this platform, as observed from left to right in the illustration, are the following pieces

Fig. 5—Power-supply platform for D-158974 radio amplifier.

of equipment: switchhouses; 4160/230-volt three-phase low-voltage power-supply transformer; the high-voltage-rectifier filter coil; and the rectifier induction voltage regulator. The three-phase high-voltage-rectifier transformer is not visible in this view, but is located behind the induction voltage regulator. The phasing of the supply to this transformer is correctly orientated to give quadrature relationship between the rectifier plates and filament currents. Such orientation is desirable to obtain maximum filament life in the mercury-vapor tubes.

The primary power for the three-phase plate-supply transformer is controlled by means of an automatic three-phase induction voltage regulator and a remotely controlled oil circuit breaker. The automatic regulator normally is set to apply approximately 6000 volts to the amplifier. Subsequently, the voltage rises in about ten seconds to the normal operating value of 13,000 volts. The automatic features may also be disengaged so that the voltage may be raised and lowered manually. The installation is novel to the extent that the value of voltage at which automatic regulation takes place can be changed over a wide range from a remote point.

The following additional pieces of equipment are located in the switchhouses: the high-voltage oil circuit breaker; auxiliary control relays; the high-voltage rectifier-filter capacitors; and a power-factor-correction circuit. The power factor is unity when the full load of the amplifier is 104 kilowatts from the supply line.

Study of Ultra-High-Frequency Tubes by Dimensional Analysis*

G. J. LEHMANN†, SENIOR MEMBER, I.R.E., AND A. R. VALLARINO‡, ASSOCIATE, I.R.E.

Summary—**The complete theory of the operation of ultra-high-frequency tubes being extremely difficult, it is shown that dimensional analysis in conjunction with experimental work is a powerful tool in this field.**

If certain general assumptions are fulfilled, the properties of ultra-high-frequency oscillators can be expressed in terms of a dimensionless parameter $\varphi=(f\times d)/\sqrt{V}$.

The dependence of efficiency on frequency in an ultra-high-frequency oscillator is considered in the first part of this paper.

In the second part, combining the previous results with the Child-Langmuir equation, the relationship between the voltage, the dimensions of the tube, and the frequency are discussed when the efficiency is maintained constant.

I. Introduction

IT IS well known that the theoretical study of vacuum-tube operation at ultra-high frequencies is extremely difficult. In this field, Llewellyn's publications are of major importance. Although his theories are based on general hypotheses, his calculations may be used conveniently only for class A operation and small amplitudes. Although most of the problems pertaining to receiving tubes might be solved in this way, this is not the case for the transmission field, where the desirability of high efficiency leads to class B or C operation, generally resulting in large-amplitude oscillations.

Triodes may arbitrarily be classified into three modes of operation. Each mode is restricted to an ascending-frequency band.

First mode, relatively low frequency: In this case, the tube operation can be understood from its static characteristics. The oscillator efficiency is above 60 per cent.

Second mode, high frequency: The maximum efficiency decreases from about 60 per cent to 25 per cent. No complete theory is yet available for this mode of operation.

Third mode, extremely high frequency: In this case, the oscillator efficiency decreases from 25 per cent to 0 per cent, and the oscillations are of small amplitudes. Here Llewelyn's calculations are easily applied.

Our classification indicates that, in the second case, which is of major interest to the communications engineer, there is no published theory available. The only printed paper to our knowledge is that of Chao-Chen-Wang.[1] In addition, even the concept of transit angle, so successfully introduced by Llewellyn, for class A, loses its simple significance in the case of class B or C operation. This fact is the reason for the large discrepancies between the results of different authors who have tried to use it.

We, therefore, believe that dimensional analysis may be useful in consideration of the operation of triodes. First, it increases the value of a small number of tests which can be the basis for the study of families of similar tubes, and second, it introduces clearly defined dimensionless parameters which can be used instead of the transit angle.

The object of the present study is to establish the basic equations of dimensional analysis in the field of oscillating vacuum tubes. The theory applies to all types of vacuum tubes, with the exception of the magnetron. We have specifically in mind the case of the triode.

Before going into the subject, we want to say that, to our knowledge, work on the same general line has been carried out by David Sloan and F. W. Boggs, of the Westinghouse Research Laboratory.

II. Hypothesis, Conditions for Validity of Results

We assume that the following conditions hold:

(a) The current emitted by thermionic surfaces is limited by space charge.

(b) Initial velocity of electrons is negligible. This presupposes that accelerating voltages are substantially greater than one volt.

(c) The maximum velocity attained does not require the use of relativity mechanics. This presupposes potentials less than 100,000 volts.

(d) Dimensions of the tube are small compared with wavelengths considered, which permits one to ignore the propagation time of electromagnetic waves inside the tube compared with the period of oscillation.

(e) The influence of magnetic fields on the motion of the electrons is negligible. The case of magnetrons will be the subject of a separate paper.

III. Equations of the Problem

Within the framework of the preceding hypothesis, the motion of the electrons is governed by the two following laws:

Poisson's equation

$$\nabla^2 V = 4\pi\rho. \tag{1}$$

Fundamental equation of mechanics

$$m\vec{a} = -e\overrightarrow{\nabla V}. \tag{2}$$

* Decimal classification: R133. Original manuscript received by the Institute, June 1, 1944; revised manuscript received, March 5, 1945. Presented, New York Section, May 3, 1944.

† Formerly, Federal Telephone and Radio Laboratories, New York, N. Y.; now, Le Matériel Téléphonique, Lyon, France.

‡ Federal Telephone and Radio Laboratories, New York, N. Y.

[1] Chao-Chen Wang, "Large-signal high-frequency electronics of thermionic vacuum tubes," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 29, pp. 200–214; April, 1941.

Poisson's equation gives the potential distributions within the tube. Two basic assumptions are made; one, that we have a space-charge-limited (unsaturated) cathode; and two, that the electrodes are all perfect conductors; i.e., they are equipotential surfaces. On this basis, the boundary conditions are linear in V, and the general solution is also linear in V; i.e., the potential at any point in the field varies linearly with the potentials at the electrodes.

We apply, then, the methods of dimensional analysis to these two equations.[2,3]

Let $|V|$ be the dimensional symbol for potential;
$|L|$ be the dimensional symbol for length;
$|T|$ be that for time;
e/m be the ratio of charge-to-mass of an electron.

We may write (2) in dimensional symbols

$$(m/e)\cdot(\vec{a}/\nabla\vec{V}) = \text{pure number}. \tag{2a}$$

In dimensional symbols $\vec{a}=|L|/|T|^2$, $\nabla V=|V|/|L|$. Note that $\nabla V=|V|/|L|$ is linear in V only because of the aforementioned assumptions.

Substituting the above symbols in (2a) we have

$$(m/e)\,|L|^2\cdot|T|^{-2}\cdot|V|^{-1} = f(\theta_1, \theta_2, \cdots, \theta_n). \tag{3}$$

The right-hand member is a differential equation involving only dimensionless quantities. Therefore, the first member is a dimensionless product Φ. From this we have the following theorem:

All calculations relative to electrodynamics in vacuum tubes contain physical quantities entirely in the form of the dimensionless product Φ.

We shall deduce some general and interesting properties from this theorem.

Consider a family of geometrically similar tubes. Take the cathode-to-plate distance d in centimeters as the unit of distance. For continuous oscillations, consider the period of oscillation as the unit of time, and write f for the frequency in megacycles per second. Finally, let V be the voltage of the fixed source of power as unity. We obtain

$$\varphi = fd/\sqrt{V} \tag{4}$$

φ being the square root of Φ, after removal of the factor e/m, constant for all vacuum tubes.

This dimensionless number will serve henceforth to characterize the mode of functioning of tubes.

IV. Study of Efficiency

To give an indication of the usefulness of this approach, we apply the method to the study of oscillator efficiency. This is a prime design consideration.

The inherent losses in the functioning of vacuum tubes result from the degradation of the kinetic energy of the electrons into heat at impact on the electrode surfaces. The result is that efficiency depends only on the motion of the electrons, governed by the equations of the preceding section. Further, efficiency η is a dimensionless number. Therefore, it will be given by an equation in the form $\eta=u(\varphi, \theta_1, \theta_2 \cdots \theta_n)$.

The θ's are dimensionless parameters containing φ and describing the conditions of adjustment of the oscillating circuit. To proceed further, we fall back on experience. This teaches us that for one value of φ there exists, in practice, only one adjustment giving optimum efficiency. In effect, what we are doing is so choosing the θ's that η approaches its maximum value. We obtain, finally, the fundamental equation, the object of all our reasoning,

$$\eta_{\max} = u(\varphi). \tag{5}$$

One value of φ corresponds to a unique value of $\eta_{\max}$ and conversely.

This property is utilized in the following manner:

For a family of tubes one draws experimentally the following curve $\eta_{\max}=u(\varphi)$.

This operation is particularly easy when a single tube possessing a known distance d is used. For example, one way of doing this is to adjust the oscillator to a fixed frequency and measure the efficiency as a function of plate voltage.

This curve, very easily obtained, permits us to predict the maximum efficiency of any tube of the family, used under the given conditions. We have to know merely the cathode-anode distance, the frequency of operation, and the plate voltage to find the maximum efficiency that can be realized for the specified conditions.

Our experience actually confirms the existence of a relation of the type (5), especially when applied to the same tube.

If one compares different tubes of the same family, because of the absence of complete geometric similarity, the resulting efficiency curves do not exactly coincide. For very different type tubes the curves are still close enough since all triodes have similar elements. Some exceptions appear, and emphasize the interest of the method in evaluating the progress made in development after the dimensional elements of the problem have been taken out.

It must be pointed out that the curves are giving the over-all efficiency, which is the tube efficiency multiplied by the circuit efficiency. When the circuit efficiency is poor, because of great ohmic losses in the conductors, the resulting curves are abnormally low. Therefore, this method leads to the discovery of over-all circuit and tube defects.

Fig. 1 shows the efficiency versus φ curves for three commercially available triodes; the 316A and 304A have similar geometry and result in similar curves.[4]

The RCA 887 has different geometry and shows a very different curve, which might be due to the circuit used for this determination.

[2] P. W. Bridgman, "Dimensional Analysis," Yale University Press, New Haven, Conn.

[3] O. W. Eshbach, "Handbook of Engineering Fundamentals," John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1936.

[4] A. L. Samuel, "Extending the frequency range of the negative grid tube," *Jour. Appl. Phys.*, vol. 8, pp. 677–688; October, 1937.

In addition, the curve for an experimental tube is given, with points taken at voltages varying over a very wide range.

V. Other Similitude Relations

As an example of the application of the preceding results, we shall establish three other relations useful in the study of ultra-high-frequency triodes.

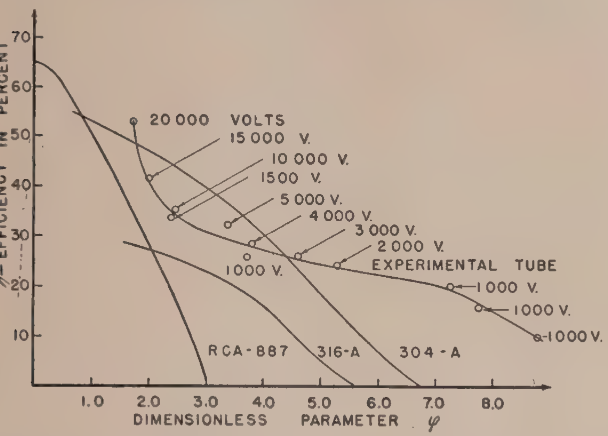


Fig. 1—Curves of efficiency versus φ. $\varphi=(fd)/\sqrt{V}$, where φ is the dimensionless parameter, f is the frequency in megacycles per second, d is the cathode-anode distance in centimeters, and V is the plate potential in volts.

We propose to compare tubes of the same type, all operating with the same efficiency η, assuming, as said previously, that this efficiency is limited by the electronic inertia.

From the condition $\eta=$constant, we take $\varphi=$constant; i.e., $(fd)/\sqrt{V}=$constant.

Let us now write the current density in terms of the space charge and the electron velocity, so that $A=\rho v$.

$A=$density of the current per unit area

$\rho=$density of the space charge

$v=$speed of the electrons.

Considerations of dimensional analysis, similar to the preceding one,[5] bring us to the general Child-Langmuir law, under the form $A=(K\sqrt{e/m})|V|^{3/2}/|L|^2$.

We will write this equation together with the preceding one (3), and by utilizing the notation used to define φ, we obtain

$$(e/m)V^{-1}d^2f^2 = K_1 \text{ dimensionless constant} \qquad (6a)$$

$$\sqrt{e/m}\,V^{3/2}d^{-2}A^{-1} = K_2 \text{ dimensionless constant.} \qquad (6b)$$

The first relation (6a) implies that we are comparing tubes operating with identical efficiencies; the second relation (6b) permits the elimination of one of the factors d or V by introducing the current density A. Our interest in this elimination comes from the fact that A may represent the maximum emission current imposed by the operation of the cathode, which, of course, plays an essential part in every vacuum tube. Let us eliminate d and we have

$$(Vf^4)/A^2 = \text{constant.} \qquad (7)$$

This relation shows that if we keep the efficiency η constant, and therefore the quanity φ, the maximum output plate voltage is $V=K_3(A^2/f^4)$.

This shows clearly that the useful plate voltage diminishes rapidly when frequency increases. The only remedy is to increase the emission A. Next let us eliminate V. We have

$$(df^3)/A = \text{constant.} \qquad (8)$$

For the same conditions, this relation gives the value of anode-to-cathode distance $d=K_4(A/f^3)$.

We have, therefore, firmly established for a given type of cathode the $1/f^3$ law which governs the distances between electrodes in a high-frequency triode. This relation had been obtained previously by less satisfactory methods and is described in an unpublished work in the Federal Telephone and Radio Laboratories.

Such a relation leads rapidly to impossibly small dimensions for the tube when f increases, and shows the reason why a given type of electronic structure can only be used within narrow frequency limits. Here, again, the gain obtained by increasing A is evident.

Finally, let us establish a relation between useful power and frequency in assuming a similitude law in three dimensions. That is to say, if d is reduced by a given ratio we assume that all the other dimensions of the tubes are reduced by the same ratio.

We are always assuming that φ is kept constant, and that no question of heating comes into the picture.

The efficiency being constant, the power is proportional to the product of a current by a voltage chosen arbitrarily in the system. The H's being constant, we have the voltage $V = H_1(A^2/f^4)$ from (7).

The current will become

$$I = A|L|^2 = H_2Ad^2 = H_3(A^3/f^6) \text{ from (8).}$$

Hence, the power will be

$$W = H_4(A^5/f^{10}). \qquad (9)$$

We are giving this merely as an interesting relationship, since it does not correspond exactly to the actual conditions in which vacuum tubes are used. Nevertheless, it gives the reason why powers obtainable drop very quickly when f increases. Again we note the great advantage in increasing A, from improvement of the cathode. In actual conditions it is, of course, not necessary to reduce *all* dimensions in the same ratio, and the power will not decrease as fast as indicated by (9).

In order to avoid any misunderstanding, we shall state again that the three relations (7), (8), and (9) have been established for a constant value of efficiency; i.e., we always select f, d, and V, such that φ remains the same. Further, A is the current density resulting from the introduction of V and d in the Langmuir equation.

[5] Irving Langmuir, "The effect of space charge and residual gases on thermionic currents in high vacuum," *Phys. Rev.*, vol. 2, series 2, pp. 450–486; December, 1913.

The equations (7), (8), and (9) are valid only when (6) is satisfied.

It is possible in certain cases to find the numerical value of the constants corresponding to certain types of tubes, and certain operating conditions. In this case, these calculations are extremely useful in designing tubes intended for a given problem.

Too limited a literature has been published on high-frequency vacuum tubes to allow us to furnish interesting numerical examples.

VI. Conclusion

In this short description, our main object has been to expose a line of approach toward the problem of ultra-high-frequency tubes, using a method which has proved extremely valuable in aerodynamics and fluid mechanics.

We should like, as a conclusion, to point out that the success of this method is based on a close co-ordination between theory and experiment. But, as is well known, this is the very basis of the science of physics.

Low-Frequency Compensation of Video-Frequency Amplifiers*

M. J. LARSEN†, ASSOCIATE, I.R.E.

Summary—**The low-frequency response of a conventional multistage plate-compensated video amplifier is analyzed in terms of the distortion of a square wave as measured by a rounding of the wave form. Design criteria are derived to give control of the amount of rounding in the initial design of the amplifier.**

Amplifier compensation effected by inclusion of a discrete impedance in the screen-grid circuit is discussed, and design formulae are derived. Comparisons of this type of compensation with that where compensation is effected exclusively in the plate circuit are made. The comparisons show that it is difficult to make a strong case favoring the adoption of screen compensation, except when direct coupling is utilized.

Introduction

In video-frequency amplifiers the problem of holding phase-shift and amplitude characteristics within prescribed limits becomes increasingly difficult as the number of stages is increased. Departures from the optimum phase and amplitude characteristics in an amplifier operating at low frequencies result in inability of the amplifier to pass low-frequency square waves without the wave being rounded, tilted, or both. In many applications it is required that an amplifier be able to pass low-frequency square waves with a considerable degree of fidelity. This paper will critically examine certain amplifier circuits which are compensated to afford more or less perfect transmission of low-frequency square waves, and certain design and performance criteria will be derived. From a theoretical standpoint, screen compensation appears to be very attractive. The critical analysis given in the latter portion of the paper shows that the acceptance of screen compensation is limited by certain practical considerations.

The basic circuit to be considered is shown in Fig. 1. This is an equivalent alternating-current circuit representative of low-frequency conditions with the high-frequency compensating features omitted. Fixed bias is assumed, as cathode compensation is not treated herein. A multistage amplifier will be tssumed to be a number of stages of like form connected in cascade.

In testing a video-frequency amplifier for response to low frequencies a common testing procedure is to apply a low-frequency square wave and observe the wave form on an oscilloscope. Analyses will be made, therefore, so that design criteria are available in terms of measurements observable on the oscilloscope. Unless the circuit elements are suitably proportioned, the wave form will appear tilted, or rounded, or both. When tested stage by stage, the tilt is corrected readily by adjustment of the grid resistance R_g of Fig. 1, provided,

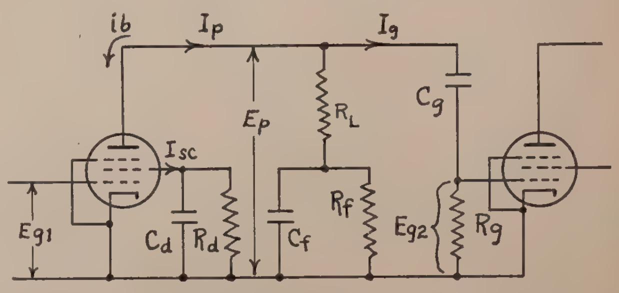


Fig. 1—Low-frequency alternating-current circuit of pentode stage for conventional video amplifier.

of course, that the other circuit elements have values within a range which will permit the adjustment.

After the tilt is adjusted, the wave form may appear rounded, as shown in Fig. 2. This rounding, when not excessive, may be considered to be caused chiefly by a fundamental component, somewhat enlarged, but in proper phase. The distorting effect of the higher odd harmonics of the square wave is minor both because of the lower reactance of the capacitances at the higher frequencies and because of the decreased amplitude of the higher harmonic components. This simplified way of considering the low-frequency square wave is not a

* Decimal classification: R363.1. Original manuscript received by the Institute, November 22, 1944; revised manuscript received, April 23, 1945.
† Stromberg-Carlson Company, Rochester, N. Y.

new approach, as it has been discussed by others, notably Preisman.[1,2]

Derivation of Expressions for Rounding

From Fig. 2 it can be seen that it is convenient to express the rounding ratio of the square wave as the increase over the normal amplitude of the fundamental component divided by either the normal amplitude of the fundamental, or divided by the peak-to-peak amplitude of the undistorted square wave. Upon considering one stage where E_{g1} is sinusoidal, the voltage E_{g2lf} appearing across the grid resistance of the second stage at low frequencies, where the capacitive reactances enter the calculations, may be shown to be

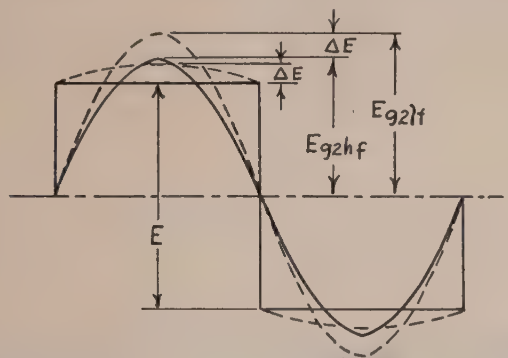


Fig. 2—A square wave showing rounding caused by an augmented fundamental component.

$$E_{g2lf} = -\{g_m E_{g1} r_{sc} R_g (R_L + Z_f)\}/Z_g(r_{sc} + Z_d) \quad (1)$$

where g_m is the grid-plate transconductance, r_{sc} is the dynamic screen resistance, and the other quantities are as referred to in Fig. 1. It is assumed in the derivation of (1) that the plate current is a function of control-grid and screen-grid voltages only, that relatively small signals are employed, and that the grid impedance made up of C_g and R_g is high enough to have negligible effect on the plate voltage. The derivation is not included as similar expressions have been derived previously. Edwards and Cherry[3] derive a general expression which reduces readily to (1).

For convenience, (1) will be considered reduced to its real and quadrature components.

$$E_{g2lf} = A + jB. \quad (2)$$

Assuming that the fundamental component to be considered at frequency f_0 is adjusted so that it is in proper phase, that is, there is no tilt of the square wave, then

$$B_0 = 0 \quad (3)$$

and

$$E_{0g2lf} = A_0 \quad (4)$$

where the zero subscripts denote calculation at reference frequency f_0. At the higher frequencies where the capacitances act as virtual alternating-current short circuits, (1) reduces to

$$E_{g2hf} = -g_m E_{g1} R_L. \quad (5)$$

For conventional operation when the distortion per stage is not to be excessive, the following restrictions hold:

$$X_{0f}^2 \ll R_f^2; \quad X_{0d}^2 \ll R_d^2; \quad X_{0d}^2 \ll r_{sc}^2. \quad (6)$$

The rounding ratio of the square wave may be written

$$\Delta E/E_{g2hf} = (E_{0g2lf} - E_{g2hf})/E_{g2hf}. \quad (7)$$

Substituting (4) and (5) into (7) while retaining restrictions (6) gives

$$\Delta E/E_{g2hf} = (X_{0f}/R_L)(X_{0f}/R_f + X_{0d}/r_{sc}) \quad (8)$$

where E_{g2hf} is the peak value of the alternating-current wave with the X's$=0$, or

$$\Delta E/E = (2X_{0f}/\pi R_L)(X_{0f}/R_f + X_{0d}/r_{sc}) \quad (9)$$

where E is the peak-to-peak value of the square wave; see Fig. 2. (Note that an analysis of a square wave shows the peak value of the fundamental to be $2E/\pi$.) The first term in the right-hand member of (9) is the rounding contributed by the plate circuit, while the second term is that contributed by the screen. A comparison of the relative contributions of the plate and the screen may be made by the following example. Assume

$C_f = 20$ microfarads	$r_{sc} = 20{,}000$ ohms
$R_f = 10{,}000$ ohms	$R_d = 56{,}000$ ohms
$C_d = 10$ microfarads	$R = 1000$ ohms
$f_0 = 20$ cycles	

Restrictions (6) are satisfied, so from (9) the rounding contributed by the plate is

$$2X_{0f}^2/\pi R_L R_f = 1 \text{ per cent}$$

and that by the screen is

$$2X_{0f}X_{0d}/\pi R_L r_{sc} = 1 \text{ per cent.}$$

Thus, the total rounding is 2 per cent. Should a number of stages be employed, it is evident that it would be well to reduce the rounding by employing larger screen-filter capacitances and possibly larger plate capacitances.

Determination of X_{0g}/R_g for Adjusted Conditions

The commonly used approximate design ratio[4,5] for determining C_g and R_g in terms of R_L and C_f is

$$R_g C_g = R_L C_f$$

or

$$X_g/R_g = X_{0f}/R_L. \quad (10)$$

This expression is entirely satisfactory for estimating R_g in practice, where often the nominal ratings of the circuit elements are not too close and a final readjustment of R_g becomes necessary in order to "square" the wave form, even though $R_f \gg X_f$, the condition under

[1] Albert Preisman, "Some notes on video amplifier design," *RCA Rev.*, vol. 2, pp. 421–432; April, 1938.

[2] Albert Preisman, "Low frequency square wave analysis," *Communications*, vol. 22, pp. 14–17, 20, 28, 35; March, 1942.

[3] G. W. Edwards and E. C. Cherry, "Amplifier characteristics at low frequencies," *Jour. I.E.E.* (London), vol. 87, pp. 178–188; August, 1940.

[4] H. Pender and K. McIlwain, "Electrical Engineers' Handbook, Electric Communication and Electronics," third edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York, N. Y., 1936, section 15, p. 33.

[5] F. E. Terman, "Radio Engineers' Handbook," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, N. Y., 1943, p. 414.

which (10) is very nearly correct. Should it be feasible to determine the circuit elements more accurately, it is of interest to obtain the more accurate ratio

$$X_{0g}/R_g = \frac{X_{0f}/R_L - X_{0d}/r_{sc}}{1 + X_{0f}/R_L(X_{0f}/R_f + X_{0d}/r_{sc})}. \quad (11)$$

As this is representative of the conditions that hold when the wave form has no tilt, it is the solution of (3) using restrictions (6) and dropping negligible terms.

Using the circuit values listed in the example above at a frequency f_0 of 20 cycles, the following comparison may be made:

$$X_{0g}/R_g = 0.40$$

for the approximate expression (10), while

$$X_{0g}/R_g = 0.35$$

for the more accurate expression (11). Using the same circuit constants, in each case, except R_g, it is seen that the more nearly accurate value for R_g is 14 per cent larger than that calculated on the basis of (10).

Some Practical Considerations

Where the screen reactance X_d is high enough to cause considerable rounding, the dynamic screen resistance r_{sc} enters into the calculations for both rounding (9) and for adjustment (11). Because of the rather wide variation in screen resistance among different samples of tubes of a given type, replacement of tubes in a multistage video amplifier is likely to cause a noticeable tilt of the previously "squared" wave. Also, changes in operating voltages affect the screen resistance. Thus, it seems better to by-pass the screen with a sizable capacitance and thereby to minimize the effect of variations in screen resistance, as well as to reduce the rounding caused by the screen circuit.

In determining the circuit parameters, both R_d and R_f preferably are made high, limited chiefly by the permissible voltage drop. The load resistance R_L is determined by the high-frequency response required. R_g often is made as high as the tube and circuit operation

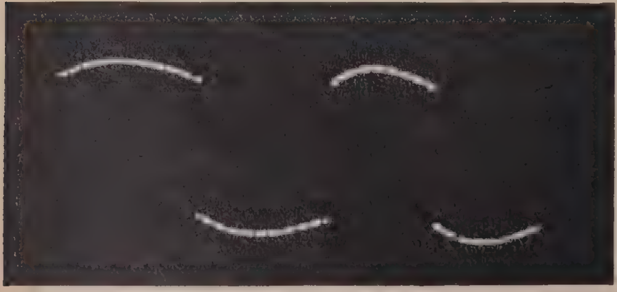


Fig. 3—Wave form showing 20 per cent rounding at output of third stage with square-wave input. The screen and plate circuits contribute equal amounts of distortion.

will allow, in order to avoid excessive sizes for the coupling capacitance C_g. The filter capacitances C_f and C_d are calculated in terms of rounding limitations by means of (9). The remaining calculation is the X_g/R_g ratio, (10) or (11), from which, of course, R_g and C_g are determined.

While the previous discussion relates to a single stage, the application to a series of stages is simple, provided the rounding or tilting per stage is not permitted to become excessive. The rounding, for instance, is directly proportional to the number of stages. Fig. 3 is an exaggerated experimental example showing 20 per cent rounding for three stages. The circuit constants are as follows:

$f_0 = 22$ cycles	$r_{sc} = 20{,}000$ ohms
$C_f = 10$ microfarads	$R_d = 56{,}000$ ohms
$R_f = 10{,}000$ ohms	$R_L = 1000$ ohms
$C_d = 5$ microfarads	

The rounding per stage calculated from (9) is $6\frac{2}{3}$ per cent, with contribution equally divided between plate and screen circuits. With a rigid screen, X_{0d} effectively zero, the rounding is cut to one half, as shown by Fig. 4.

Fig. 4—Wave form showing 10 per cent rounding at output of third stage with square-wave input. The same circuit as for Fig. 3 is employed except that here the screen-filter reactance is effectively zero.

Tests cannot be tried always on a single stage because the effect may be too small to observe, yet the cumulative effect of a large number of stages may be severe. One per cent rounding in one stage, for example, may not be noticeable, but this would lead to ten per cent in ten stages which may be altogether excessive. A few preliminary calculations of the type discussed would predict the end result with reasonable accuracy.

Screen-Compensation Considerations

While in general with insufficient capacitance in the screen filter the screen contributes to distortion, it is possible to choose the screen-filter parameters in a manner which will yield complete compensation at some specified reference frequency. To derive the appropriate expression for this screen-filter impedance, it is necessary to equate vectorially the low-frequency grid voltage with the high-frequency grid voltage, as the high-frequency conditions are representative of operation with no phase or amplitude shift introduced by the circuit elements. Thus, equating (1) with (5) at reference frequency f_0 gives

$$Z_{0d} = r_{sc}\{(1 + Z_{0f}/R_L)/(1 - j\alpha_0) - 1\} \quad (12)$$

where $\alpha_0 = X_{0g}/R_g$.

To aid in obtaining numerical results, the right-hand member of (12) may be resolved into the form

$$Z_{0d} = r_{sc}(a - jb) \tag{13}$$

where it can be shown that a and b are real and positive provided

$$\alpha_0 < \{(X_{0f}R_f^2)/[R_L(R_f^2 + X_{0f}^2) + X_{0f}^2R_f]\}.$$

It is assumed further that all of the restrictions (6) need not apply when (12) is satisfied, and consequently (9) and (11) are not valid in the present discussion. With the screen-filter impedance considered as R_d and X_{0d} in parallel, then, using (13),

$$R_d = r_{sc}(a^2 + b^2)/a \tag{14}$$

$$X_{0d} = r_{sc}(a^2 + b^2)/b. \tag{15}$$

Although perfect compensation is indicated at frequency f_0 for all values of α_0 that satisfy (12), there exists an amplitude and phase shift between f_0 and the higher frequencies where the X's become negligible.

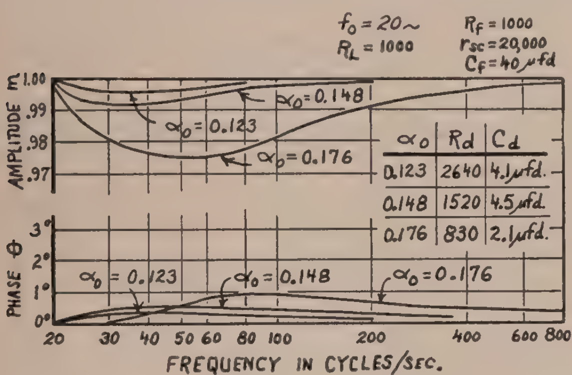


Fig. 5—Comparison of amplitude and phase variations with increase in frequency, assuming compensation operative at 20 cycles.

The calculated example of Fig. 5 shows a comparison of amplitude and phase variation with increase in frequency for three values of α_0, assuming compensation at 20 cycles with circuit parameters as listed. The curves

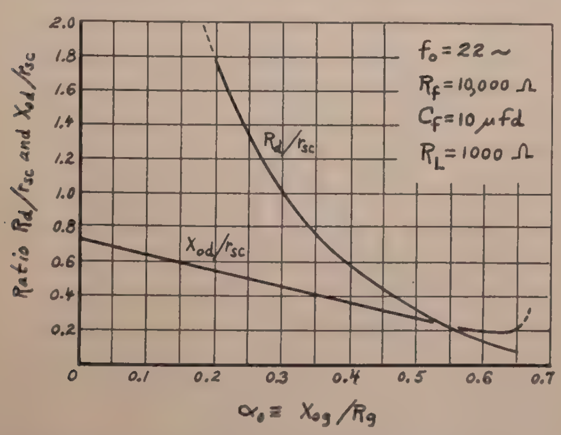


Fig. 6—Screen-filter values versus the grid-impedance ratio necessary to establish compensation when using the circuit constants listed. The circuit values are typical of a voltage-gain stage.

show that compensation improves throughout the frequency range as α_0 decreases. In fact, the compensation is perfect for $\alpha_0 = 0$, direct coupling, as is evident from (12) which reduces to

$$Z_{0d} = r_{sc}Z_{0f}/R_L \tag{16}$$

with both Z_{0d} and Z_{0f} composed of a resistance and capacitance in parallel, thus satisfying (16) at all frequencies.

Calculations for curves of the type shown in Fig. 5 are too tedious to warrant extension to numerous examples. The improvement in compensation as α_0 decreases can be observed experimentally, however, by viewing the output of a screen-compensated amplifier having a square-wave input. In Fig. 6, curves of R_d/r_{sc} and X_{0d}/r_{sc} taken from (14) and (15) are shown plotted versus α_0 for the three-stage amplifier which was used in obtaining the wave forms in Figs. 3 and 4. Fig. 7

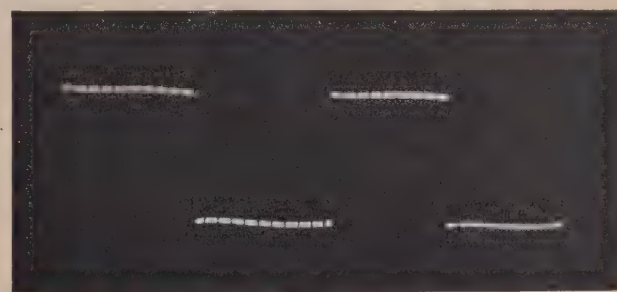


Fig. 7—Output wave form of three-stage amplifier using screen compensation with $f_0 = 22$ cycles, $\alpha_0 = 0.6$, and other values to correspond, as taken from Fig. 6.

shows the wave form taken with values corresponding to $\alpha_0 = 0.6$. The presence of phase and amplitude shift in the higher harmonics of the wave of Fig. 7 manifests itself in the irregularities which appear noticeably reduced in Fig. 8 where α_0 is reduced to 0.4.

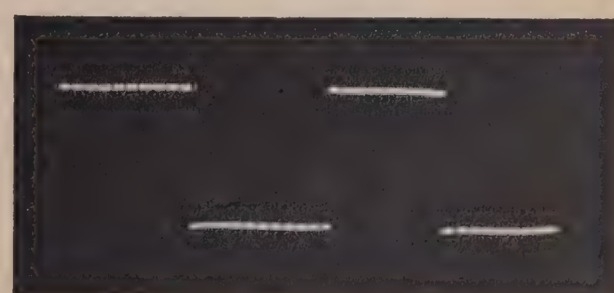


Fig. 8—Same as for Fig. 7 but with α_0 decreased to 0.4.

In case of a power stage the plate-filter resistance R_f must be limited to avoid excessive voltage drop. Without screen compensation, (9) dictates at low frequencies the use of a large plate-filter capacitance if the rounding is to be maintained at a low level. Curves of R_d/r_{sc} and X_{0d}/r_{sc} versus α_0 for screen compensation are shown in Fig. 9 for circuit values typical of a power stage. In this example X_{0d} has a very limited range, regardless of α_0. Fig. 10 shows the output of a single 6AG7 stage, uncompensated, with rigid screen, having approximately 10 per cent rounding at 20 cycles with circuit parameters, as listed in Fig. 9. The screen-compensated wave form at 20 cycles with circuit parameters corresponding to an α_0 of 0.2 is shown in Fig. 11.

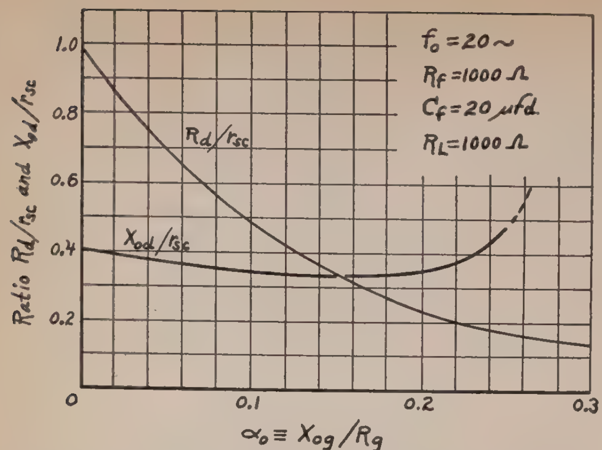


Fig. 9—Screen-filter values versus grid-impedance ratio necessary to establish compensation when using the circuit constants listed. The circuit values are representative of a power stage.

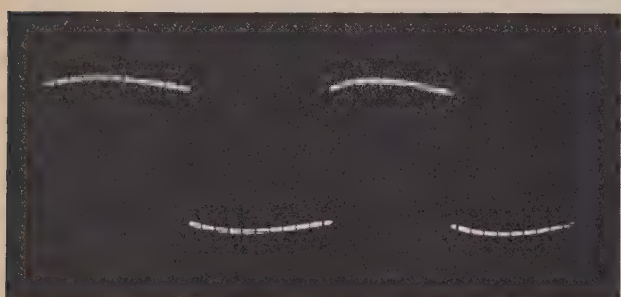


Fig. 10—Output wave form of a single 6AG7 stage with square-wave input, screen-filter reactance effectively zero, and other values as listed in Fig. 9.

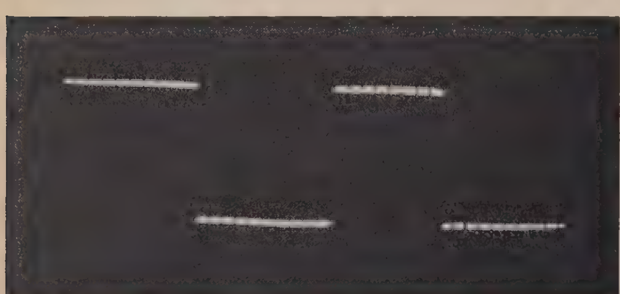


Fig. 11—Same amplifier as used for Fig. 10 but screen compensated with circuit parameters as shown in Fig. 9, using $\alpha_0 = 0.2$.

Criticism of Screen Compensation

It has been shown that under certain conditions complete compensation is attainable in the conventional circuit by using discrete screen-filter elements, that response between the reference frequency f_0 and the higher frequencies improves as α_0 is decreased, and that perfect compensation is realized when α_0 is zero. It does not follow, however, that it is of great advantage to incorporate screen compensation in every circuit. Consider as an example the power stage operating under conditions illustrated by Figs. 9, 10, and 11. Using $C_f = 20$ microfarads, and, from (11), $X_{0g}/R_g = 0.36$, the rounding is 10 per cent without screen compensation. Employing screen compensation with $\alpha_0 = 0.2$ the rounding appears to be negligible. (Note that α_0 expresses the ratio X_{0g}/R_g when screen compensation is used.) With screen compensation, however, the lower X_{0g}/R_g ratio necessitates using a higher coupling capacitance C_g, assuming R_g to be fixed. If, then, this larger C_g is permissible without causing excessive leakage current, say, or excessive capacitance to ground at the high video frequencies because of greater physical size, a comparison may be made on the basis of equal X_{0g}/R_g ratios. Without screen compensation, using $X_{0g}/R_g = 0.2$, therefore, C_f would be approximately 40 microfarads which would reduce the rounding from 10 per cent to $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent, as the rounding is proportional to the square of the capacitive reactance, assuming X_{0d} to be negligible. While this distortion is still somewhat more than when using screen compensation, the argument that using screen compensation permits using smaller coupling capacitances for a given distortion may not always be controlling.

In the case of direct coupling, on the other hand, when $\alpha_0 = 0$, screen compensation provides a means, alternative to cathode compensation, of correcting distortion introduced by the plate-filter circuit.

As evident from (14) and (15) the screen-filter parameters depend directly upon the dynamic screen resistance of the tube concerned. As the screen resistances often vary markedly from tube to tube and are subject to change with change in bias voltage or other operating voltages, the practical difficulties encountered in employing screen compensation are augmented. When all factors are considered, it becomes difficult to make a strong case favoring the adoption of screen compensation, particularly for multistage video amplifiers. For the direct-coupling application, however, usually one stage only is involved. Consequently, no accumulative distorting effects are produced and minor changes in operating voltage would have negligible distorting effect on the wave form.

Acknowledgment

The writer wishes to express his appreciation of the generous help given by A. E. Newlon and Myron Kantor in the preparation of this paper.

Books

The Design of Broad-Band Aircraft-Antenna Systems*

F. D. BENNETT†, P. D. COLEMAN†, AND A. S. MEIER†

Summary—A complete technique for the development of broad-band aircraft antennas at frequencies from 10 to 100 megacycles is described. The paper is divided into three sections concerned with (1) antenna-impedance measurement in aircraft, (2) design of reactance-matching sections for antenna, and (3) development of broad-band wire antennas for aircraft use.

Part I. Impedance Measurement: A coiled line and probe assembly, using commercial flexible cable, is described. The punctured line and tuned probe system operate in the same manner as the familiar high-frequency slotted lines. Because of slight losses on the line, corrections must be made to standing-wave ratio and voltage minimum position x_{min}. Both graphical and analytical methods for making these corrections are described. Comparison of coiled-line measurements with General Radio 916-A bridge measurements leads to the tentative conclusion that the system is accurate to ± 5 per cent. Subsequent engineering use corroborates this conclusion. Extension of the method to 200 megacycles by means of a tuned vacuum-tube-voltmeter probe is indicated. Measurement of standing-wave ratios higher than 15/1 have been made.

Part II. Impedance Matching: Because of the wide range of impedance values presented by any antenna termination over a range of frequencies, it is desirable to use reactance networks to match the antenna to the feed line. Four representations of antenna impedance are introduced—the impedance-frequency, admittance-frequency curves, and the impedance and admittance diagrams in the complex plane. With the help of these, a criterion for match is introduced; viz., that the standing-wave ratio on the line be equal to or less than two. The problem is then seen to be that of warping the antenna curve into the $\rho = 2$ circle on an admittance or impedance diagram. The geometrical effects of single reactance elements in series and shunt with the antenna are investigated. Two-element matching networks are discussed and "best-match" procedure outlined. It is observed that a "bazooka," used to transform a balanced antenna to unbalanced feed line, can simultaneously be made to perform as a typical two-element matching section. It is concluded that high-impedance antennas can be matched more easily than low-impedance antennas, but that in any case the position of the antenna curve in the complex plane is more important than its initial bandwidth.

Part III. Broad-Band Fan Antenna: The use of conventional methods of broad-banding an antenna; i.e., expansion of the radiator to large lateral dimensions, is discussed and shown to be unfeasible for aircraft use at frequencies from 10 to 100 megacycles. Large conductors cannot be used because of the conspicuous target they present and the excessive amounts of wind drag involved. For these reasons, multiwire antennas were investigated. The two-wire V antenna is shown to have increasingly favorable broad-band characteristics up to flare angles of 50 to 60 degrees. With a suitable matching section, bandwidths as high as 30 per cent can be obtained.

Addition of a top wire closing the V gives rise to the prototype fan antenna. Antennas of the 3-, 4-, and 5-wire type are seen to have favorable broad-band properties, but the increment gained decreases with each successive wire. Two-element matching sections added to 3- and 4-wire antennas are shown to produce bandwidths of 32 to 45 per cent, which are adequate for most low-frequency applications. While the techniques described are very powerful at low frequencies, their use is not limited and may be extended successfully to much higher ranges.

PART I

A Coiled Line for Aircraft-Antenna Impedance Measurement from 10 to 80 Megacycles

F. D. Bennett

I. Introduction

THE DESIGN of aircraft-antenna systems is at present based to a large extent on experimental data concerning antenna impedance and pattern characteristics. This is so because modern, metal airplanes constitute very complicated grounds for the antennas to work against, and because aerodynamically suitable antennas are very often quite different in construction and essential dimensions from those used at identical frequencies in ground installations.

It is the purpose of this paper to describe a coiled-line impedance-measuring system which has been used in the design of aircraft antennas at Aircraft Radio Laboratories, Wright Field.

Any impedance-measuring system to be of use in aircraft tests must be compact, simple, rugged, and relatively insensitive to outside electrical disturbances. The system described here satisfies all these requirements to a high degree without sacrificing reasonable engineering accuracy.

The usual impedance bridges available for use in the part of the frequency range up to 50 megacycles (such as the General Radio 916-A bridge) are much too sensitive and delicate to lend themselves to the rigors of aircraft use. Their balance conditions are extremely sensitive to variations in grounding and to other external conditions not easily controlled; while the auxiliary apparatus, such as a precision signal generator and

Fig. 1—Measuring line and probe assembly, showing (1) coiled line, and (2) probe box.

* Decimal classification: R525×R240. Original manuscript received by the Institute, February 13, 1945; revised manuscript received, July 2, 1945. Presented, Winter Technical Meeting, New York, N. Y., January 27, 1945.

† Wright Field, Dayton, Ohio.

sensitive receiver, is not adapted to use under conditions of extreme vibration and noise such as are encountered during flight.

Precision-slotted lines, using air or low-loss dielectric, are available at frequencies from 100 megacycles up, but even these are from four to six feet long, and involve sensitive detection systems not adapted to use in aircraft under flight conditions.

These difficulties have been overcome by use of a coiled low-loss cable and probe system wherein commercial 50-ohm cable, punctured at intervals to admit the probe, forms the counterpart of the slotted line; while a system of coupled resonant circuits and a line transformer comprise the high-impedance probe, equivalent in action to the crystal or bolometer probes commonly found in slotted-line equipment. Insensitivity to external electrical disturbances is assured through the use of a signal generator that delivers 10 watts power over the range of frequencies employed. This high power level has the further advantage that the power required to operate the probe is an insignificant fraction of the total power available, and consequent distortion of the standing wave by the probe is kept to a minimum.

II. Description of the Line

The coiled line consists of about 20 meters of commercial low-loss coaxial cable of approximately 50 ohms characteristic impedance. RG-8/U cable or its equivalent is satisfactory. As may be seen in Fig. 1, the line is coiled in a tight spiral on an aluminum sheet $\frac{3}{32}$-inch thick and approximately 30×40 inches in lateral dimensions. It is supported about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the aluminum plate by small strips of copper sheet that are cut

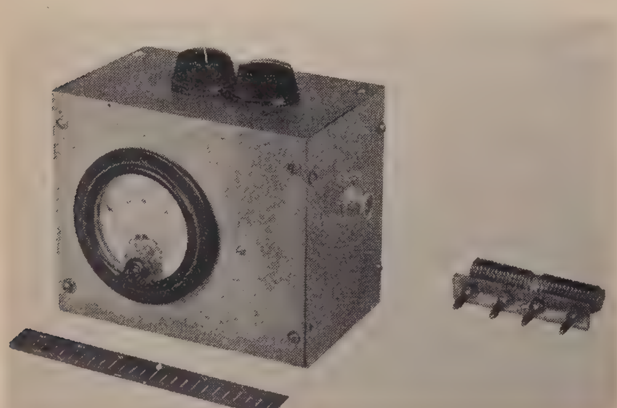


Fig. 2—Probe box and coil.

about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch wide, bolted tightly about the outer braids of the cable, and secured to the aluminum sheet with a bolt and elastic stop nut. A $\frac{1}{8}$-inch hole is cut through the top of the copper strip encircling the cable and through the outer braid to the dielectric. A smaller hole through the dielectric to the center conductor allows one conductor of the probe to be touched to the center of the line while the other is grounded to the outer braid in the same operation. The probe holes are spaced accurately 5 centimeters apart, and every other hole is numbered consecutively from the load; thus the number of the hole divided by 10 gives the distance in meters of the hole from the termination of the line. Type N or ultra-high-frequency connectors may be used on each end of the line, depending on which is more likely to be used in the antenna design.

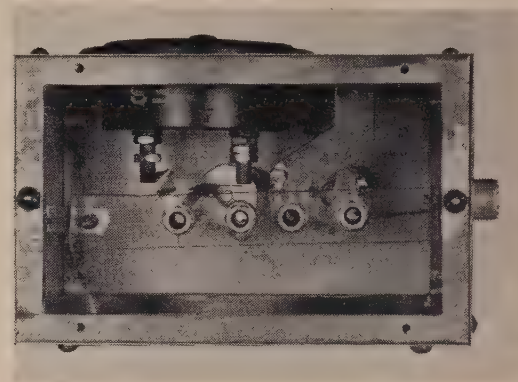


Fig. 3—Interior of probe box (bottom cover removed).

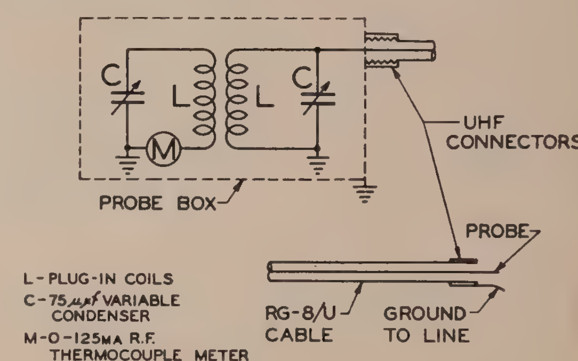


Fig. 4—Schematic diagram of probe assembly.

Figs. 2, 3, and 4 show the details of the probe box and cable used in obtaining relative voltages from the line. The probe assembly[1] consists of two resonant circuits coupled loosely together. The first is manually connected in parallel with the conductors of the line by means of a length of 50-ohm cable fitted with the probe tip and grounding strip. The probe tip may be a stiff copper wire used to extend the center conductor of an ultra-high-frequency plug, while the grounding strip can be easily constructed of a strip of copper or copper braid. Tuning the first circuit changes the impedance placed across the line by the probe tip; tuning the second circuit controls the current passing through the radio-frequency milliammeter, allowing adjustment to any desired value. By using several different pairs of tuning coils, the range from 10 to 80 megacycles may be covered.

Several interchangeable lengths of cable, each

[1] A high-impedance probe of this type was described to M. S. Wong, of Special Projects Laboratory, Aircraft Radio Laboratories, in 1941, by Andrew Alford, of Radio Research Laboratory, Harvard University.

equipped with a probe tip, must be provided in order to cover the frequency range. Each length will cover small bands of frequencies for which it transforms the impedance offered by the probe box to the highest possible value across the probe tips. When the first circuit is tuned to resonance, it offers a very high impedance to the probe cable. Because of the loose coupling and the fact that the meter circuit is usually considerably off resonance, the tuning of the meter circuit has small effect on the impedance offered by the first circuit. If the connectors and construction of the probe box could be neglected, the correct cable length would be one-half wavelength at each frequency. In practice, the length must be determined experimentally, and it turns out to be considerably shorter than one-half wavelength.

Of course, even under the best conditions of probe tuning, the introduction of the probe tip into the line distorts the voltage standing wave. When using a signal generator providing 10 watts power, the effect of the probe is usually negligible, and very good results may be obtained.

Before the coiled line can be used effectively, its characteristic impedance and relative velocity must be determined. These may be determined by making measurements of the line, open and short-circuited, with a radio-frequency bridge, at several frequencies in the range. Another method involves measuring the wavelength on the line directly and measuring the frequency by means of a heterodyne frequency meter, thus finding v/c. Determination of the capacitance per unit length of the line at a very low frequency (200 kilocycles), using a Q meter together with a standard capacitor, enables Z_0 to be calculated. For the line illustrated in Fig. 1, $Z_0=48.0\pm0.2$ ohms, and $v/c=0.650\pm0.002$. The losses on the line cause Z_0 to be reactive to the extent of about 0.1 ohm, but for practical purposes this quantity can be neglected. Throughout the following work, Z_0 will be assumed real.

III. Method of Measurement

In order to illustrate the method of using the coiled line, and the best procedure in adjusting the probe, a description of the general requirements and adjustments of a successful experimental arrangement will be given.

Whether the line is used with a ground screen in a laboratory or in measurements conducted during flight in an aircraft (Fig. 5), the aluminum line sheet must be securely mounted and grounded to screen or to the metal airframe at several points, with ground strips as short as possible. As the line is connected to the sheet all along its length by means of the copper supports and the grounded case of the probe box is connected with short straps to the sheet, sufficient grounding of the sheet automatically assures grounding of the rest of the line.

In tuning the probe, an auxiliary vacuum-tube voltmeter is very useful as a sentinel. The voltmeter should be connected across the line at a T connector between generator and line. With the signal generator tuned to the desired frequency, the line should be probed for a voltage maximum, and the current through the probe meter adjusted to a medium value. At the voltage maximum, the probe should be moved rapidly in and out, making and breaking the connection. A flicker on the sentinel voltmeter will indicate that the presence of the probe is shifting the voltage wave along the line. The probe circuit should be tuned until the sentinel ceases to flicker, meanwhile adjusting the meter current so that the milliammeter stays on scale. Lack of flicker of the sentinel with the probe moving in and out is evidence that the probe has negligible effect on the standing wave. Data may now be taken.

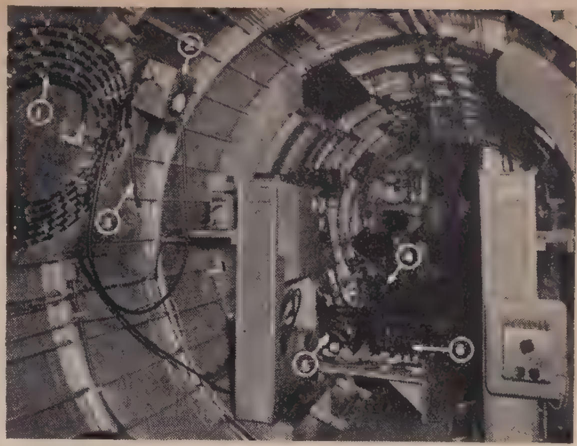


Fig. 5—Impedance-measuring equipment installed in an airplane. The circled numbers serve to locate the coiled line (1), probe box (2), probe cable (3), inverter (4), oscillator (5), and power supply (6).

Inability to tune the probe usually indicates the selection of the wrong probe cable, although in some instances instability in the signal generator will make good probe tuning impossible. When the probe is improperly tuned, an unsymmetrical voltage wave will be obtained. A check on either side of a voltage maximum or minimum will indicate whether the tuning is sufficiently good.

With the probe tuned, the data taken consists of probe milliammeter readings recorded against distance from the termination of the line; i.e., the number of the hole probed. Also, data for three maxima and three minima should be taken. Not all the holes need be probed, except in the vicinity of a maximum or a minimum. As will be seen later, more of the curve around a minimum is required than around a maximum.

IV. Calculation of Impedance

If the coiled line were lossless, the only data needed in order to calculate the impedance terminating the line is the standing-wave ratio and the position of the first voltage minimum $x_{\min}$. Because of the small losses in the coaxial cables, corrections must be applied to the apparent values of both these quantities.

In Appendix I (equation numbers refer to the

Appendix) it is shown that the voltage maxima lie on the straight-line envelope

$$y_1 = \alpha(A - B)x + (A + B) \tag{16}$$

and the voltage minima on the straight-line envelope

$$y_2 = \alpha(A + B)x + (A - B) \tag{17}$$

where x is the distance along the coiled line measured from the termination, α is the attenuation constant in nepers per meter, A is the amplitude of the voltage wave traveling towards the termination, and B is the amplitude of the voltage wave reflected back toward the generator. In terms of these definitions, the standing-wave ratio $\rho = (A+B)/(A-B)$; and it is easily seen that the ratio of the intercepts of these lines gives exactly ρ.

Fig. 6 shows two typical voltage standing waves. The tangent lines to the minima and maxima have been drawn, the intercepts found, and the values of ρ obtained. The values of $x_{\min}$ have been located by joining the midpoints of three horizontal chords through the troughs. The vertical lines resulting pass through the voltage curve so near the true $x_{\min}$ position that for all $\rho \geqq 1.3$ (see discussion in Appendix I) no correction need be made. Fig. 7 has been included to show how the impedance calculation is carried out by means of a standard transmission-line chart.[2]

In the event that a value of $\rho < 1.3$ is measured, it becomes necessary to correct $x_{\min}$ for the effects of attenuation. The analysis of Appendix I shows that correction may be made graphically if chords through the voltage troughs are drawn parallel to the line passing through the voltage minima. An analytical expression for the correction is also available as

$$C = (\alpha/\beta^2)[\rho/(\rho^2 - 1)] \tag{22}$$

where all the symbols are defined as before and in addition $\beta = (2\pi)/\lambda$. To apply the analytical correction it is necessary to know the value of α for the line at the frequency of measurement. This may easily be found from (16) and (17) utilizing the fact that slope of y_1 is $\alpha(A-B)$ and $(A-B)$ is the intercept of y_2. Similarly, the slope of y_2 is $\alpha(A+B)$ and the intercept of y_1 is $(A+B)$. Both values of α should be calculated and the average taken; for a slight error in determination of either of the slopes can introduce large error[3] into the value of α.

Figs. 8 and 9 show both the graphical and analytical methods of correction of $x_{\min}$. The agreement is seen to be excellent.

V. Accuracy of the System

Possible sources of error and their approximate contributions may be listed as follows:

1. *Error in standing-wave ratio due to inaccuracy in meter readings ±0.5 to ±10 per cent as ρ varies from 1/1 to 5/1:* This error occurs because at lower values the

[2] P. H. Smith, "An improved transmission line calculator," *Electronics*, vol. 17, pp. 130–133; January, 1944.

[3] For a high standing-wave ratio $(A-B)$ approaches zero, and the value of α calculated from the slope of the upper envelope may be greatly in error. In this event the value from the lower envelope alone should be used.

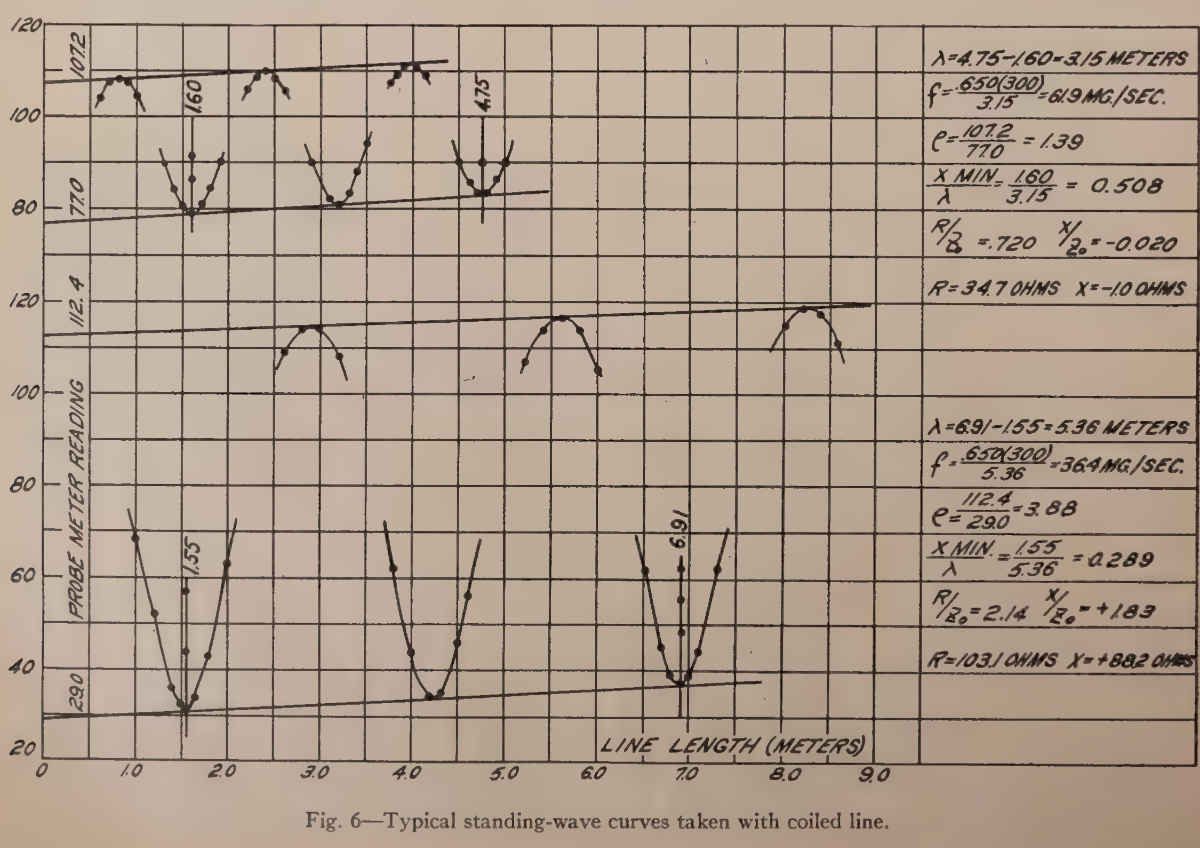
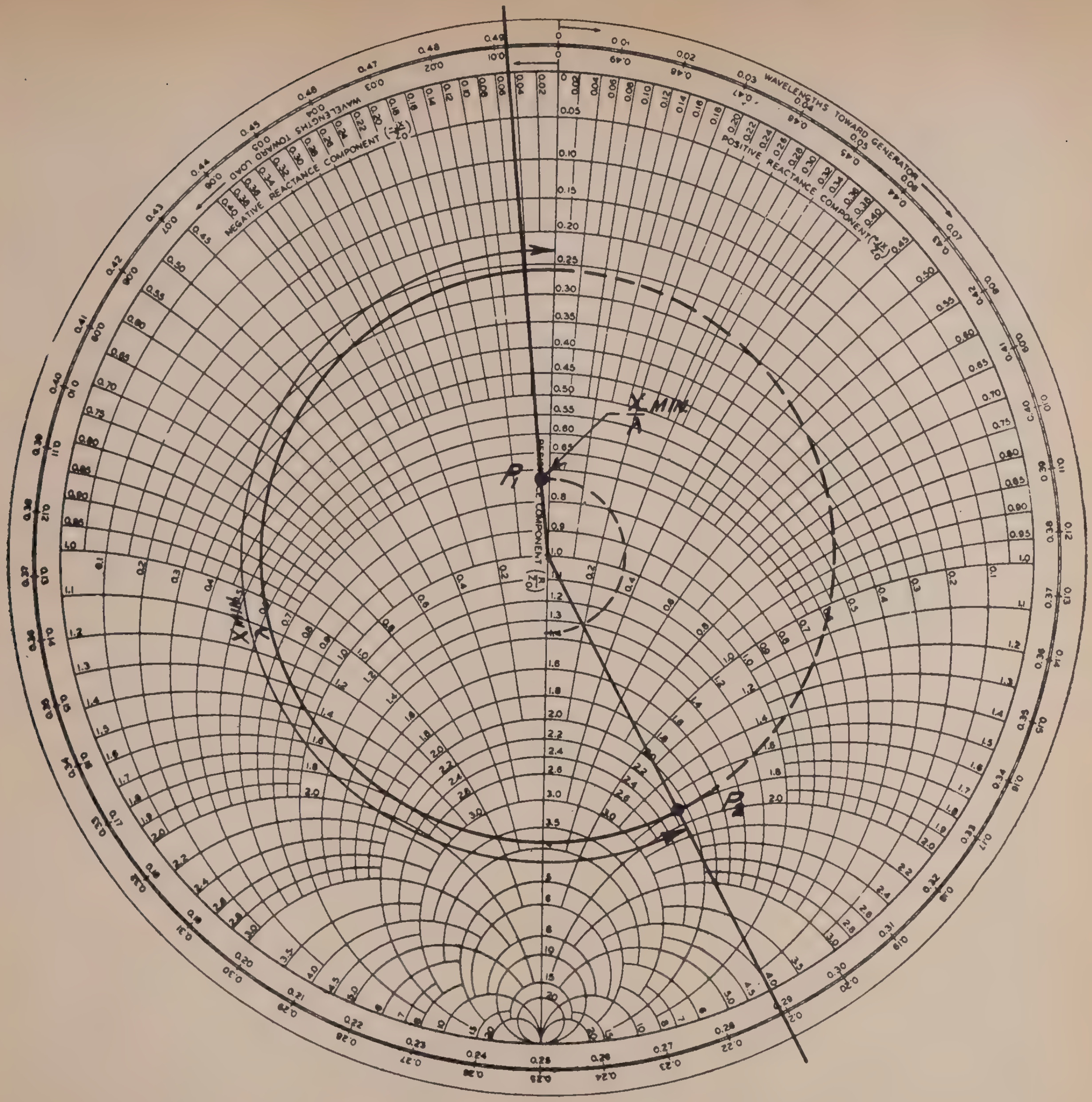


Fig. 6—Typical standing-wave curves taken with coiled line.



P1—IMPEDANCE (FIG. 6—TOP)

P2—IMPEDANCE (FIG. 6—BOTTOM)

Fig. 7—Impedance chart showing terminating-impedance calculations for curves in Fig. 6.

scale of the meter is crudely divided and divisions are closely spaced.

2. *Error in determination of* $x_{\min} \pm 1.0$ *centimeters:* As $x_{\min}$ varies from zero up to 3 meters or more, the percentage error varies from very large values to less than one per cent. A glance at the chart will show that when $x_{\min}$ is very small the reactance is near zero and errors in $x_{\min}$ will cause very large percentage errors in reactance, possibly even causing it to change sign.

3. *Error in the determination of the wavelength on the line* ± 2.0 *centimeters:* As no wavelengths less than 2 meters are encountered, this is one of the smallest errors, being always less than 1 per cent.

4. *Error in the determination of the line constants* ± 0.2 *ohm in characteristic impedance and* ± 0.002 *in relative velocity:* These result in percentage errors of ± 0.5 and ± 0.3, respectively.

Trials with the chart will show that the errors in standing-wave ratio and $x_{\min}$ may, in critical cases where the standing-wave ratio is large, cause errors in

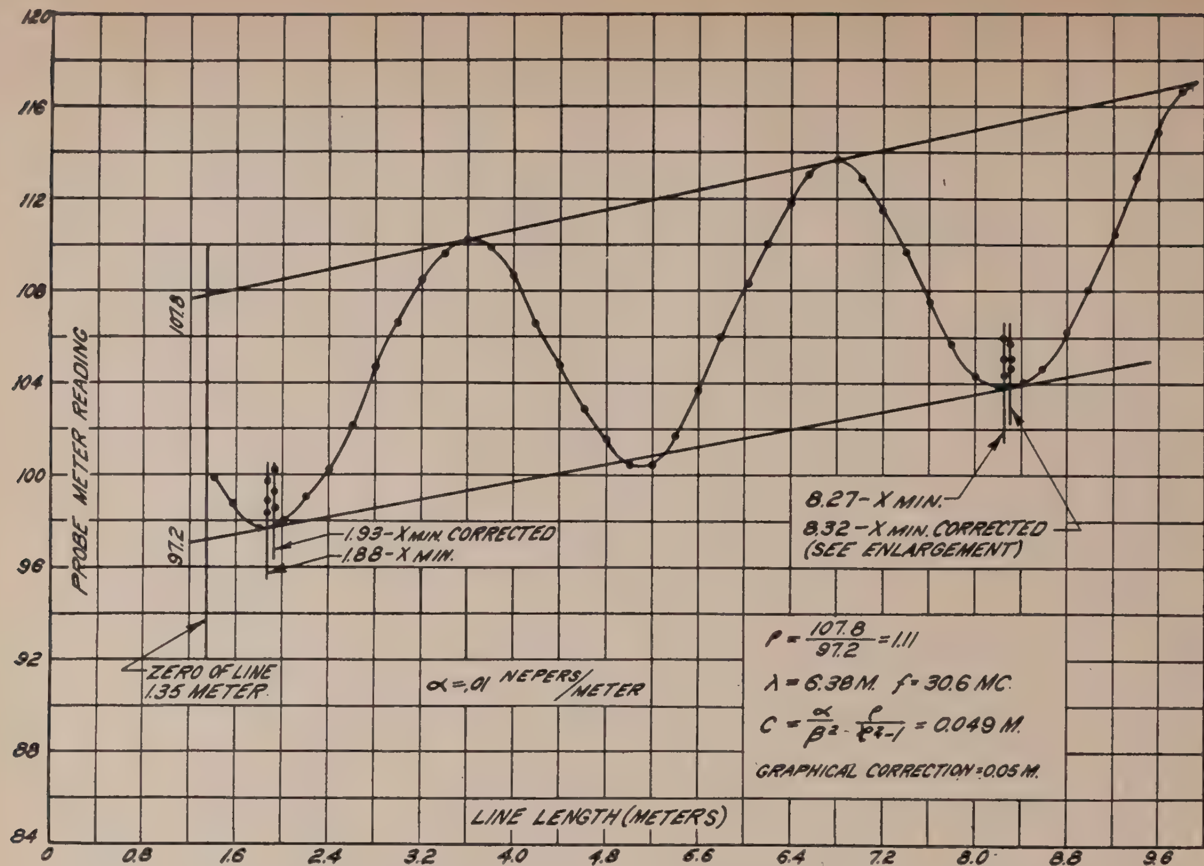


Fig. 8—Voltage curve showing effect of attenuation on the position of the voltage minimum.

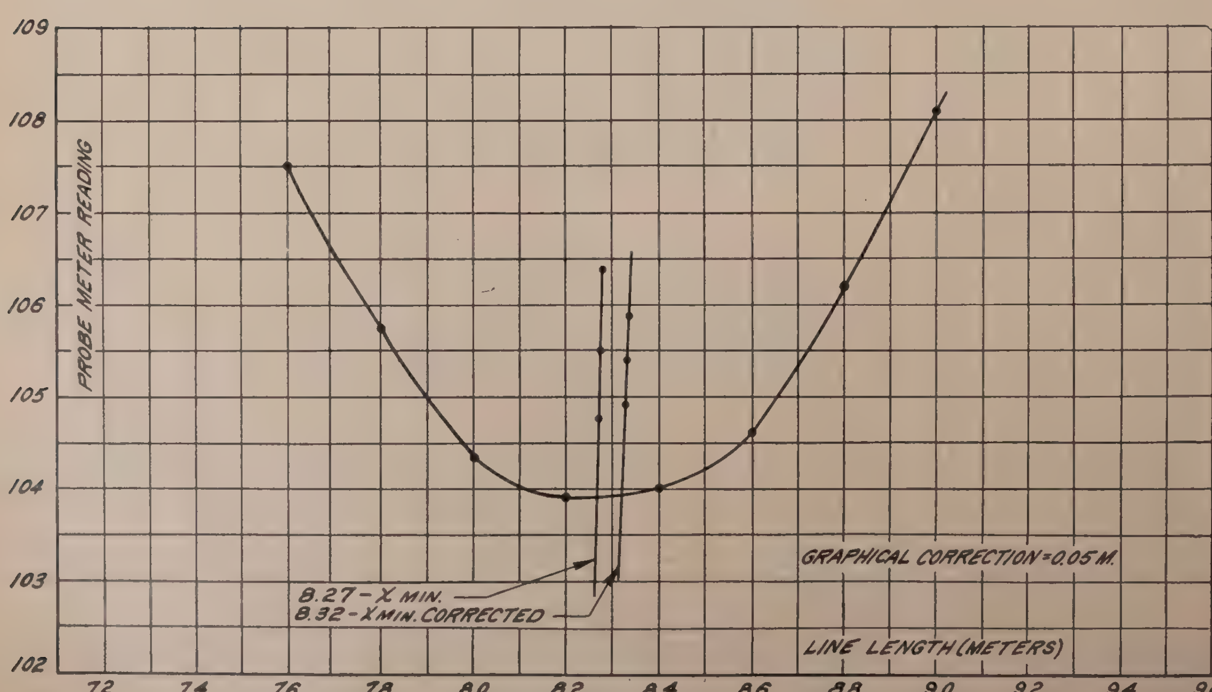


Fig. 9—Enlargement of voltage minimum showing effect of attenuation.

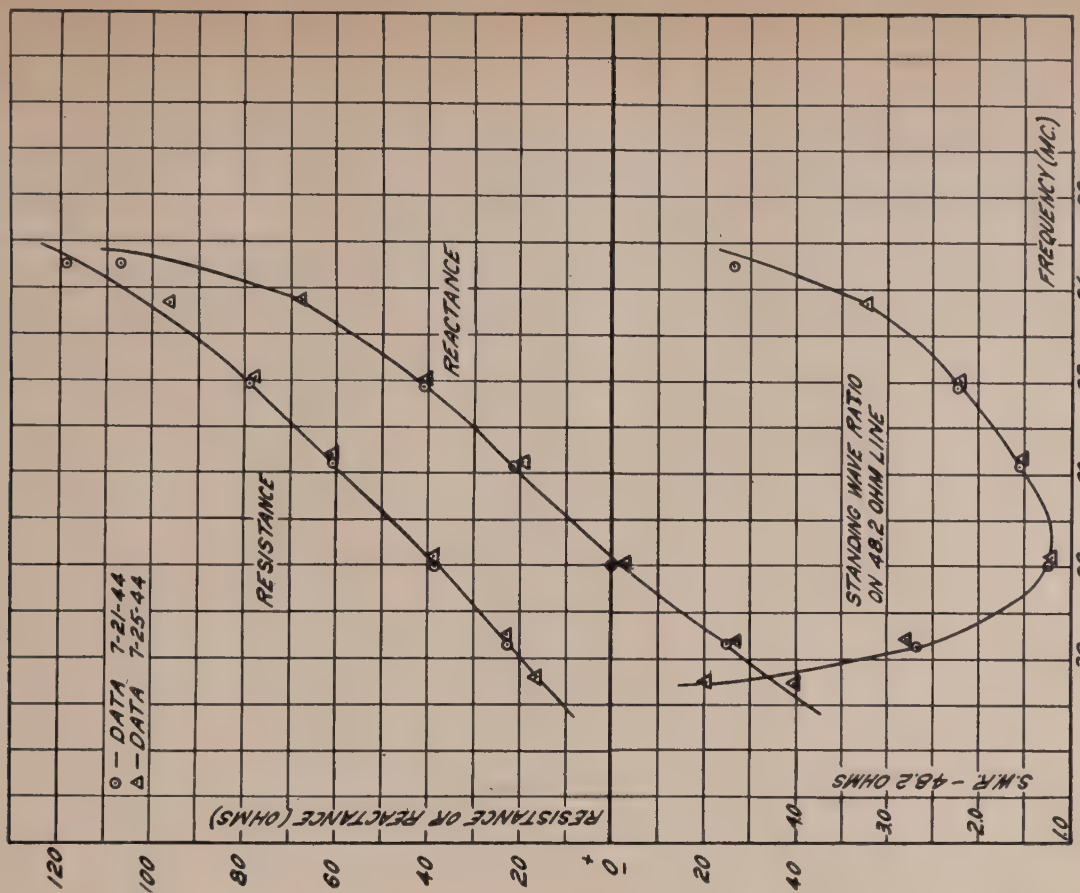


Fig. 11—Impedance measurements showing reproducibility of coiled-line data.

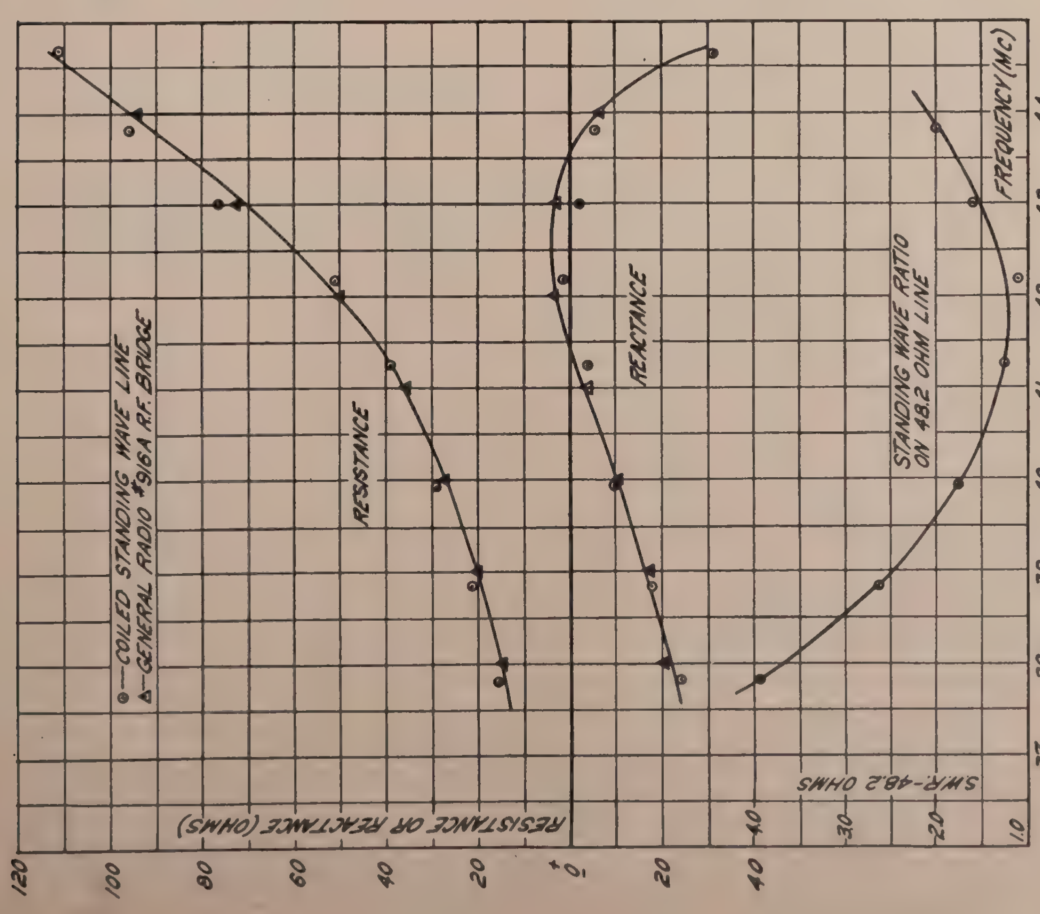


Fig. 10—Comparison of coiled-line and General Radio 916-A bridge measurements.

resistance of ± 10 to 20 per cent and errors in reactance near zero values of over ± 100 per cent, but in most cases all the errors combined will not total more than ± 5 per cent in either resistance or reactance.

In Fig. 10 is shown a comparison of impedance measurements of an antenna on a ground screen made with the standing-wave line and with the General Radio 916-*A* bridge. General Radio specifies an accuracy of ± 1 per cent or ± 0.1 ohm in resistance, and ± 2 per cent or ± 1.0 ohm in reactance in the range of the bridge.

These limits of accuracy presumably apply to a laboratory-bench setup. In antenna measurements on a ground screen, such conditions cannot be met, as connection to the antenna must be made through a length of cable (0.58 meter in this case) and use must be made of numerous grounding straps from the bridge equipment to the screen. While uncertainties due to the connecting cable were minimized by taking the impedance at its open end as the desired antenna impedance to be measured by both bridge and line, the ground-screen arrangement introduces sufficient other uncertainty to necessitate doubling the limits of error suggested by General Radio. We feel that the bridge measurements under these conditions cannot be better than ± 2 per cent or ± 0.2 ohm in resistance, and ± 4 per cent or ± 2.0 ohms in reactance.

If the mean of the bridge and line measurements be taken as a standard for purposes of comparison, inspection of the curve shows that the line measurements deviate no more than ± 5 per cent in resistance and ± 5 per cent in reactance, save at regions where the reactance values are near zero. For small reactance values, as has been mentioned before, normal errors of measurement of x_{min} and λ cause very large percentage errors in x_{min}, and consequently in the reactance.

Fig. 11 shows the results of line measurements made on an aircraft antenna during consecutive ground tests made at an interval of three days. Over nearly all the range, the agreement between both resistance and reactance values is less than 5 per cent, while at the high-frequency end where the highest values of standing-wave ratio ρ are encountered, deviations of 7 per cent in reactance are noticeable. While part of the deviation at low standing-wave-ratio values is due to the increased uncertainty in the measurement of ρ, experience has shown that external conditions during the ground test, such as the position of neighboring aircraft and ground vehicles, can substantially affect the antenna impedance, especially at high values of resistance and reactance. Fig. 11 demonstrates the excellent reproducibility of the line measurements.

In order to show what results may be expected in the solution of a practical antenna problem with the line-measuring equipment, Fig. 12 has been included. In this problem, an antenna was measured on a B-17 aircraft in flight. From the initial data, a matching section for the antenna was calculated and a working model constructed with the aid of the 916-A bridge. The antenna and matching section was then measured on the B-17. Fig. 12 shows the comparison between the impedance calculated for the antenna with matching section and the impedance actually measured on the aircraft.

VI. Extension of the Method

One of the most severe limitations on the coiled-line method described above is the use of a radio-frequency

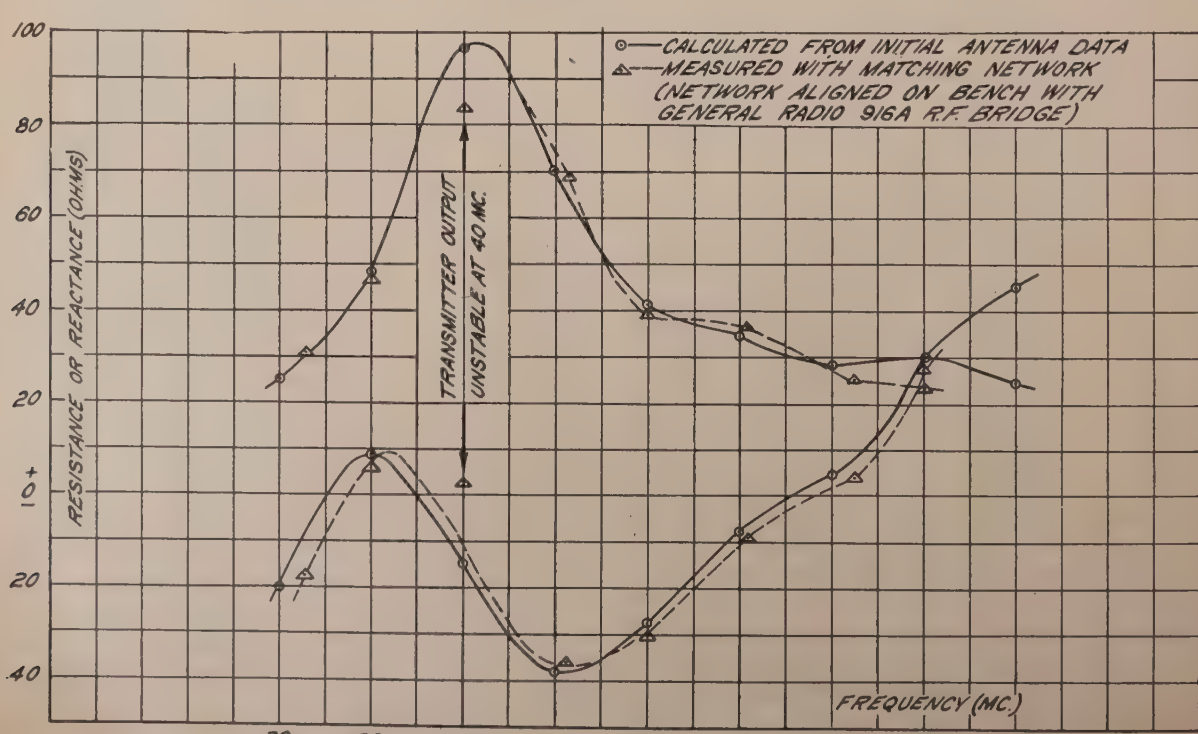


Fig. 12—Comparison of calculated matching section with experimentally observed impedance measured with coiled line.

milliammeter in the probe circuit, as the meter makes impossible the accurate measurement of standing-wave-ratio values higher than 6/1 because of the squared scale and crude division at low values.

This difficulty has been partially overcome by using a multiscale vacuum-tube voltmeter and a tunable series-line element with the probe cable connecting the meter to the coiled line. The tunable element or "line stretcher" is merely an adjustable length of 50-ohm line which allows accurate tuning of the probe so that the transformation due to the cable and stretcher together causes maximum impedance to appear at the probe tips. A General Radio 727-A voltmeter has been found extremely useful because of its high input impedance and its portability.

Using a coiled line with holes spaced at 2-centimeter intervals and the probe mounted as just described, measurements of ρ up to 15/1 are very easy in the range of 50 to 200 megacycles, and some measurements higher than 50/1 have been made. In all cases, excellent voltage curves were obtained and corrections carried out as before. While sufficient evidence has not yet been obtained to clear all objections, reactance values measured with this equipment are believed accurate to ± 5 per cent, and resistance values within ± 15 per cent.

VII. Conclusion

A coiled-line method of impedance measurement has been described. The method is applicable in the range 10 to 80 megacycles, which is not adequately covered by other impedance-measuring equipment.

The apparatus described is suitable for use in aircraft measurements during flight, and should find application in measurements made in tanks, ships, etc., where simplicity, compactness, stability, and rugged construction are at a premium.

Comparison of the method with standard radio-frequency bridge measurements leads to the conclusion that the accuracy of measurement is probably within ± 5 per cent in resistance and reactance. Successful engineering designs of aircraft antennas and matching sections confirm this estimate.

Indications are given that the method may be extended to cover the frequency range up to 200 megacycles and to measure standing-wave ratios as high as 50/1.

Appendix I

Derivation of the Line and Correction Formulas

In this section a brief account will be given of the line theory n cessary in the calculation of impedance from the data obtained by the measurement of the voltage standing wave on the coiled line.

It is proposed to justify (a) the fundamental formulas and the methods of calculation applicable to a lossless line; (b) the graphical methods for the correction of standing-wave ratio ρ for the effects of attentuation on the line; (c) an analytical method for the correction of the position of a voltage minimum for the effects of attentuation; (d) the graphical method for accurate location of the minimum voltage positions on the line.

Derivation of Fundamental Formulas (Fig. 13)

Assuming a uniform line of real characteristic impedance Z_0 terminated in an impedance Z_A located at

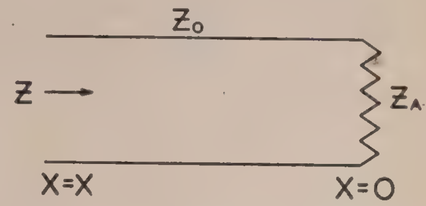


Fig. 13—Schematic diagram of transmission line.

$x=0$, and measuring x positive toward the generator, we can write the equations for voltage and current along the line in the following form:

$$E_\alpha(x) = A_1 e^{\gamma x} + B_1 e^{-\gamma x}$$
$$I_\alpha(x) = (1/Z_0)[A_1 e^{\gamma x} - B_1 e^{-\gamma x}] \tag{1}$$

where $\gamma = \alpha + j\beta$ the complex propagation constant

$A_1 = Ae^{j\theta_1}$ the complex amplitude of the wave traveling from the generator to the load

$B_1 = Be^{j\theta_2}$ the complex amplitude of the reflected wave

$A \geqq B \geqq 0$.

The subscript α indicates that the effect of the attenuation on the voltage and current functions is included. Subscript 0 will indicate lossless line.

The quantity obtained in standing-wave line measurements is proportional to the absolute value of the voltage. Considering a lossless line and letting $\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \psi$ we obtain from (1)

$$|E_0| = [A^2 + 2AB \cos(2\beta x - \psi) + B^2]^{1/2}. \tag{2}$$

Applying the condition for the location of the maxima and minima of the absolute voltage curve

$$d|E_0|/dx = 0 \tag{3}$$

results in the condition that

$$\sin(2\beta x - \psi) = 0 \tag{4}$$

which is satisfied for two sets of values of the argument

$$(2\beta x_{\max} - \psi) = 0, 2\pi, \cdots, 2n\pi$$
$$(2\beta x_{\min} - \psi) = \pi, 3\pi, \cdots, (2n+1)\pi. \tag{5}$$

Substitution of (5) into (2) gives, in turn,

$$|E_0|_{\max} = A + B$$
$$|E_0|_{\min} = A - B \tag{6}$$

from which we may define the standing-wave ratio as

$$\rho = |E_0|_{\max}/|E_0|_{\min} = (A+B)/(A-B). \tag{7}$$

Returning to (1) and using the definition for impedance Z at point x on the lossless line,

$$Z(x) = [E_0(x)]/[I_0(x)]$$
$$= Z_o[A + Be^{-i(2\beta x - \psi)}]/[A - Be^{-i(2\beta x - \psi)}]. \tag{8}$$

At a voltage minimum where the second part of (5)

applies, (8) becomes

$$Z_{\min} = Z_0(A \dot{-} B)/(A + B) = Z_0/\rho. \quad (9)$$

Thus, by measurement of the voltage standing-wave ratio and the position of $x_{\min}$ on the line (usually the first minimum) sufficient data are obtained to determine the impedance at the end of the line; for the input impedance Z at a voltage minimum is given by (9). Using a transmission-line chart of the type developed by Smith,[1] one may set up the standing-wave ratio ρ on the real axis of the chart, rotate around the circle of constant ρ toward the load through $(x_{\min}/\lambda)+0.25$, and read the load impedance Z_A from the circle.

Correction of the Standing-Wave Ratio

The coiled line described in this paper has appreciable attenuation for which correction formulae will be derived. In the analysis of the corrections which follows, comparison will be drawn continually between the absolute-voltage standing wave on the line with attenuation and the absolute-voltage standing wave on the corresponding lossless line. For most purposes, the type of cable used in the construction of the coiled line may be considered lossless; however, when accurate measurements of impedance with such a line are desired, the effects of attenuation become very noticeable and corrections are necessary.

The absolute value of the voltage on the line with attenuation is found from (1) to be

$$|E_\alpha| = [A^2e^{2\alpha x} + 2AB\cos(2\beta x - \psi) + B^2e^{-2\alpha x}]^{1/2}. \quad (10)$$

For the purposes of this analysis it is useful to consider (10) as a function of the variables $|E_\alpha|$, x, and the parameter ψ.

Varying the parameter ψ generates the family of absolute-voltage curves of constant standing-wave ratio ρ. The physically equivalent situation is to cause Z_A to vary so that its representative point on the transmission-line chart moves around the circle of constant standing-wave ratio ρ; $x_{\min}/\lambda$ then varies continuously and consequently the $x_{\min}$ on the line moves along the x direction.

Expressing (10) so that it can be represented as

$$F(|E_\alpha|, x, \psi) = 0 \quad (11)$$

the envelopes of the voltage curve may be found by eliminating ψ between (11) and

$$F_\psi'(|E_\alpha|, x, \psi) = 0. \quad (12)$$

Carrying out the differentiation in (12) yields

$$\sin(2\beta x - \psi) = 0 \quad (13)$$

which implies

$$\cos(2\beta x - \psi) = \pm 1. \quad (14)$$

Substituting (13) into (11) gives the two envelope curves, the first of which is tangent to the maxima, the second being tangent to the minima.

$$\begin{aligned} |E_\alpha|_1 &= Ae^{\alpha x} + Be^{-\alpha x} \\ |E_\alpha|_2 &= Ae^{\alpha x} - Be^{-\alpha x}. \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

Comparison with (4), which applies to the lossless line, shows the very important result that the maximum and minimum points of the voltage curve on the lossless line occur at the same abscissas as the tangencies of the attenuated voltage curve with its upper and lower envelopes.

At this point we wish to make use of the approximations $e^{\alpha x}=1+\alpha x$ and $e^{-\alpha x}=1-\alpha x$ in (15). The error incurred in these approximations is discussed in Appendix II, where it is shown that these approximations achieve the same result as taking the first two terms of the Taylor's series expansion of the envelope curves.

From the first of (15) we obtain

$$|E_\alpha|_1 = \alpha(A - B)x + (A + B) \quad (16)$$

a straight line of slope $\alpha(A-B)$ and intercept $(A+B)$; from the second

$$|E_\alpha|_2 = \alpha(A + B)x + (A - B) \quad (17)$$

a straight line of slope $\alpha(A+B)$ and intercept $(A-B)$.

As the ratio of the intercepts of (16) and (17) is exactly ρ, the standing-wave ratio we wish to find, a method of correction of the attenuated curve is clearly to draw the lines tangent to the maxima and minima of the attenuated curve and evaluate their intercepts.

If the slope of one line be taken with the intercept of the other, the value of α can be calculated. The two quantities obtained this way, when averaged, give a reasonably accurate value of the attenuation constant for the coiled line, providing the two slopes can be evaluated with comparable accuracy. At high standing-wave ratios, $\alpha(A-B)$ approaches zero and cannot be accurately measured.

In some experimental situations, a length of cable may be used to connect the impedance to the standing-wave line. Here, rather than extrapolate the envelope lines and risk a considerable graphical error in determining the intercepts, an analytical correction may be applied.

The lines (16) and (17), while not passing tangent to the precise maxima and minima of the attenuated curve, nevertheless constitute excellent approximations to these quantities. Defining

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{(x)} &= |E_\alpha|_{\max}/|E_\alpha|_{\min} \doteq |E_\alpha|_1/|E_\alpha|_2 \\ &= [\alpha(A-B)x+(A+B)]/[\alpha(A+B)x+(A-B)] \end{aligned} \quad (18)$$

and using $\rho=(A+B)/(A-B)$ we find

$$\rho = [\rho_{(x)} - \alpha x]/[1 - \alpha x\rho_{(x)}]. \quad (19)$$

Correction of the Minimum Position

The observation was made in the previous section that the minima of the unattenuated $|E_0|$ curve fall at exactly the positions of tangency of the lower envelope with the $|E_\alpha|$ curve. To obtain the correct value of $x_{\min}$, it would then be sufficient to determine the abscissa at which the lower envelope is tangent to the attenuated curve. This cannot be done accurately by inspection of the curve, so a more precise technique is necessary. A graphical method applicable to regions of the voltage minimum which closely approach a parabola may be

deduced from the property of conics: that the bisector of a family of parallel chords through the conic passes through the point of tangency of the line parallel to the chords; therefore, if the straight-line envelope to the voltage curve be drawn, three or more chords parallel to this line may be constructed in the lower part of the voltage trough. The line passing through the midpoints of these chords will intersect the curve at the $x^0_{\min}$ of the lossless curve.

The minimum of the $|E_\alpha|$ curve may be found similarly by constructing horizontal chords in the voltage trough. As this construction is easier than the previous one, it is desirable to have an analytical correction to apply that will enable determination of the $x^0_{\min}$ of the $|E_0|$ curve from that of $|E_\alpha|$.

Applying $d|E_\alpha|/dx=0$ to (10) we obtain as the condition for the maxima and minima

$$\sin(2\beta x-\psi)=[\alpha(A^2e^{2\alpha x}-B^2e^{-2\alpha x})]/[\beta 2AB]. \quad (20)$$

Using the approximations $e^{2\alpha x}=1+2\alpha x$, $e^{-2\alpha x}=1-2\alpha x$, and neglecting all terms in α^2 or higher, (20) becomes $\sin(2\beta x-\psi)=\alpha(A^2-B^2)/(\beta 2AB)$ and if the definition $\rho=(A+B)/(A-B)$ be applied

$$\sin(2\beta x-\psi)=(\alpha/\beta)[2\rho/(\rho^2-1)]. \quad (21)$$

Since α is a very small quantity, the right side of (21) is ordinarily very small, and the condition is practically the same as (4) for the lossless line.

As it will be observed that for $\rho\to 1$ and $\rho\to\infty$ the right side of (21) approaches infinity and zero respectively, there are two critical values of ρ which must be found by analysis of the inequality.

$$(\alpha/\beta)]2\rho/(\rho^2-1)]-\delta\leqq 0. \quad (22)$$

These critical values of ρ are: (a) ρ_m such that when $\rho<\rho_m$ no real values of x exist which satisfy (21). This corresponds to finding the limiting value of ρ for which (21) is less than or equal to 1. (b) ρ_b such that the approximation $\sin\theta\doteq\theta$ may be applied to (21) with an error of less than 1 per cent.

The inequality (22) is equivalent to

$$y=\rho^2-[(2\alpha)/(\delta\beta)]\rho-1\geqq 0 \quad (23)$$

which will be satisfied for values of ρ greater than the positive root of y. This limiting value is

$$\rho_L=[\alpha/(\delta\beta)]+\sqrt{\alpha^2/(\delta^2\beta^2)+1}\,. \quad (24)$$

Using $\delta=1$ in (24) gives the value of ρ_m. Table I shows values of ρ_m for typical 50-ohm cable over a considerable range of frequencies.

TABLE I

f	α	β	ρ_m
10	0.0020	0.322	1.0062
50	0.0053	1.61	1.0033
100	0.0080	3.22	1.0025
150	0.010	4.83	1.0020

To obtain ρ_b, note that $\sin\theta\doteq\theta$ within 1 per cent when $\theta\leqq 0.1$ radian which gives the value of $\delta=0.1$. As the ratio α/β decreases with increasing frequency, the largest value of ρ_b will obtain at $f=10$ megacycles. Thus $\rho_b=1.064$ at the lowest frequency of operation. Values of ρ as small as this are rarely encountered at any frequency; so the approximation of (b) holds for all ρ of interest in impedance measurement.

Applying the sine approximation to (21) and examining $x_{\min}$ positions

$$(2\beta x_{\min}-\psi)=(2n+1)\pi-(\alpha/\beta)[2\rho/(\rho^2-1)]. \quad (25)$$

Denoting the corresponding minimum on the lossless line by $x^0_{\min}$ and using the second of (5)

$$(2\beta x^0_{\min}-\psi)=(2n+1)\pi. \quad (26)$$

Eliminating ψ between these equations and solving for $x^0_{\min}$

$$x^0_{\min}=x_{\min}+(\alpha/\beta^2)[\rho/(\rho^2-1)]. \quad (27)$$

Showing that the minimum position of the attenuated line may be corrected to give the minimum on the lossless line by addition of the correction factor.

$$C=(\alpha/\beta^2)[\rho/(\rho^2-1)]. \quad (28)$$

Finally, it is of interest to find the value ρ_B such that for $\rho\geqq\rho_B$ the correction C is less than experimental error, about 1.0 centimeter.

Carrying out an analysis of (28) similar to that performed on (22), we find

$$\rho_B=\alpha/(2\beta^2C)+\sqrt{1+(\alpha/2\beta^2C)^2}. \quad (29)$$

Taking $C=0.01$ meter we obtain the values given in Table II.

TABLE II

f	α	β^2	ρ_B
10	0.0020	0.104	2.35
30	0.0038	0.924	1.23
50	0.0053	2.60	1.11
100	0.0080	10.4	1.04
150	0.010	23.2	1.02

A correction to $x_{\min}$ must be applied when

$$\rho_b\leqq\rho\leqq\rho_B \quad (30)$$

which for the cable constants assumed in Tables I and II means

$$1.06\leqq\rho\leqq 2.35$$

at the lowest frequency of operation of the line. The upper bound drops rapidly with frequency to values less than 1.3. No correction to $x_{\min}$ is necessary for $\rho>\rho_B$ as the correction is smaller than the error in determining the position of $x_{\min}$. Below ρ_b the correction may not be applied as the approximations used in its derivation no longer hold; however, below this standing-wave ratio the terminating impedance is the same as the Z_0 of the line within experimental error.

APPENDIX II

DISCUSSION OF ERROR IN APPROXIMATING THE ENVELOPE FUNCTIONS

In this section we wish to determine the error in the envelope curves (15) introduced by approximating the functions by the first two terms of their series.

Taylor's expansion of a function about the point zero

$$f(h)=f(0)+\{[hf'(0)]/1!\}+\{[h^2f''(0)]/2!\}+\cdots+R_n$$

and $R_n = [h^n f^n(\theta h)]/n!$ where $0 < \theta < 1$ when applied to the first of (15) gives

$$|E_\alpha|_1 = (A + B) + \alpha x(A - B) + [(\alpha^2 x^2)/2!](Ae^{\theta \alpha x} + Be^{-\theta \alpha x}). \quad (31)$$

The remainder R_3 when divided by $|E_\alpha|_1$, gives the fractional error in the approximation and as

$$R_3 = [(\alpha^2 x^2)/2!](Ae^{\theta \alpha x} + Be^{-\theta \alpha x}) < [(\alpha^2 x^2)/2!](Ae^{\alpha x} + Be^{-\alpha x}) \quad (32)$$

the fractional error is bounded thus:

$$R_3/|E_\alpha|_1 \leq \alpha^2 x^2/2!. \quad (33)$$

A similar analysis shows the same result for the lower envelope.

We shall consider the approximation as sufficiently good providing

$$\alpha^2 x^2/2! < 1/1000 \quad (34)$$
$$\alpha x < 0.045.$$

In Table III the distance along the line to which the approximation holds is worked out for a number of frequencies.

TABLE III

f	α	x	x/λ
10	0.002	22.5	1.2
20	0.003	15.0	1.5
80	0.007	6.4	2.6

It is rarely necessary to obtain data over more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ wavelengths; so the approximation holds over the useful lengths of the cable from 20 megacycles up. At frequencies as low as 10 megacycles the approximation no longer holds, but these fall well within the limit set by the requirement that $(\alpha^2 x^2)/2!) < 1/500$ be true.

PART II

IMPEDANCE MATCHING

P. D. COLEMAN

I. INTRODUCTION

Power is usually supplied to a load impedance Z_A with a transmission line. For maximum efficiency and power transfer, the load impedance Z_A should match the line; i.e., Z_A should be the conjugate of the characteristic impedance of the line $Z_0 = (R_0 + jX_0)$. In the usual application, where the Z_0 of the line is taken to be real, this means that the load should be a constant resistance equal to R_0.

If an antenna is fed by a transmission line, then it follows that the antenna impedance Z_A should match the line. However, this is very seldom the case, especially over a range of frequencies, so that it becomes necessary to transform the antenna impedance Z_A to R_0 by use of pure reactive networks for maximum power transfer. At a single frequency, a simple "T" section can easily be calculated to perform this transformation, but over a range of frequencies, the problem becomes more difficult. The antenna impedance Z_A will change with frequency as well as the elements of the "T" section, so that an impedance match will not be maintained.

It is the aim of this paper to discuss the design of simple one- and two-element networks for matching an arbitrary antenna impedance over a broad range of frequency to a cable of characteristic impedance R_0. These networks are especially applicable to low-frequency aircraft antennas where physical size is limited. By their use, a given resonant antenna's bandwidth can be expanded two to three times with only two elements, and by the use of plug-in matching sections, frequency ranges of 2 to 1 below 100 megacycles can be realized.

The matching methods presented apply both to balanced and unbalanced antenna systems, and also to balanced antennas fed by unbalanced lines through the aid of a bazooka or balancing transformer. Where a bazooka is used, the matching methods are incorporated into the design, so that balancing and matching are achieved simultaneously.

II. METHOD OF ATTACK

A. Balanced and Unbalanced Systems

The pure reactive elements at one's disposal are, of course, coils, capacitors, and transmission lines; i.e., lumped and distributed parameter elements. Anyone who has analyzed a complex network soon discovers how complicated the algebra of the complex quantities becomes as the number of elements increases. In fact, the arithmetic often becomes so laborious and involved for the usual worker that he cannot see the forest for the trees. A coimbnation analytical-and-graphical method of network analysis has been devised to avoid the complexity of a purely analytical approach and to give a clear, general, over-all picture of the solution to the problem.

From the transmission-line equation

$$Z_s/Z_0 = [(Z_A/Z_0) + j(\tan\theta)]/[1 + j(Z_A/Z_0)\tan\theta]$$

where Z_s and Z_A are the input and terminating impedances, Z_0 and θ are the characteristic impedance and electrical length of the line, it can be shown that the loci of impedances that will give constant standing-wave ratios are circles in the complex plane. Now in impedance matching, it is the usual practice to adopt a certain standing-wave ratio ρ as the mismatch limit allowable. Here the value of $\rho = 2$ is chosen, so that the criterion of match will be any impedances that fall on or in the circle for $\rho = 2$. In each of the figures, this 2-to-1 circle is drawn for reference.

The transmission-line equation has the same form for admittances as impedances, so that the criterion of match is the same for both types of representation.

The general graphical method that will be applied is as follows: A typical antenna impedance and admittance curve in the complex plane is investigated through the first resonant and antiresonant points. This will give an idea of the general characteristics of the impedances and admittances to be matched for one unfamiliar with antennas. Next, the effect of coils, capacitors, and lines,

both in series and parallel, is determined upon various portions of curves of these general shapes. The guiding principle applied is to try to move or collapse the given curve into the $\rho=2$ circle. This same principle, however, should not be applied for combinations, as it is often desirable to set up the curve for the succeeding elements, rather than try to match into the circle with the first element.

Next, two-element combinations are illustrated. Most of these follow by intuition; however, a few may not be obvious. The rule of thumb here is to set up the antenna curve with the first element for the second as stated before; i.e., try to warp the antenna curve into a curve near that of the ideal load of the second element. By definition, an ideal load is the load in which the line or impedance element must be terminated to see R_0 looking into the input terminals.

It was intended to discuss three-element networks in this paper, but space will not permit.

B. Balanced Systems Fed with Unbalanced Lines by Means of a Bazooka

A coaxial-line bazooka (of the type represented in Fig. 14) achieves a balance-to-unbalance transformation

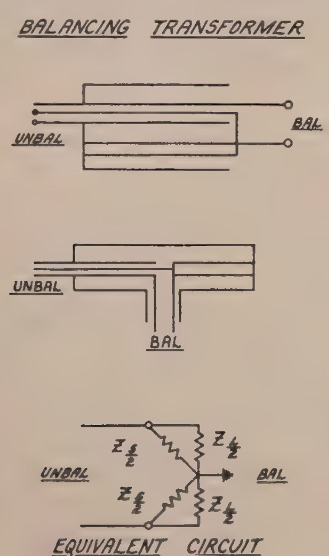


Fig. 14—Schematic drawing and circuit diagram of a broad-band balancing transformer.

by isolating the inner and outer conductors of the unbalanced coaxial line from ground by an insertion of quarter-wave stubs. This places a parallel circuit across the balanced load. Hence, in using a bazooka for both matching and balancing, the parallel circuit or stub must occur somewhere in the matching network. The guiding principle in balanced-to-unbalanced transformer-matching design is to arrange to have the balanced load changed by one or several impedance elements on the balanced side to a load impedance, such that it approximates the ideal load for the stubs. Adding the stubs will then both match the load and make the balancing transformation simultaneously. Or if the balanced load is such that addition of the stubs will set up the impedance curve for a line on the unbalanced side, matching and balancing may be designed entirely inside the bazooka.

III. Discussion of Curves

A. Antenna Curve

In Figs. 15, 16, 17, and 18, the impedance and admittance characteristics of a typical low-frequency broadband antenna are plotted versus relative frequency η. η is based upon the first resonant-frequency point of the antenna where it is taken equal to one. Two facts may be noted in Figs. 15 and 16: first, the antenna has a negative susceptance slope with respect to η around resonance; and second, a negative reactance slope with respect to η around antiresonance. This means, of course, that the susceptance or reactance in these regions may be cancelled wholly or partially by a properly chosen parallel or series-resonant circuit that could be added to the antenna. Furthermore, it might be observed that the slope of the resistive and reactive components of impedance with respect to η is greater around resonance than the slope of the conductive and susceptive components of admittance with respect to η around antiresonance.

Finally, in Figs. 17 and 18, it is noted that the portion of the antenna curve satisfying the matching criterion (points lying on or in the $\rho=2$ circle) are the points from $\eta=0.95$ to $\eta=1.15$ approximately, or a bandwidth of some 20 per cent. The definition of percentage bandwidth is taken to be as follows: let η_1 and η_2 be the lower and upper frequencies, where the antenna curve enters and leaves the $\rho=2$ circle. Then the percentage bandwidth is $[(\eta_2-\eta_1)/\eta_1]\times 100$ per cent or $[(\Delta\eta)/\eta_1]\times 100$ per cent. For the example given, $\Delta\eta=0.20$ and $\eta_1=0.95$.

B. Properties of Single Elements

1. *Series capacitor*

In Figs. 19 and 20, the effect of a series capacitor is given in both impedance and admittance diagrams. Here, just the portion of an antenna curve around resonance is considered, where in this case the impedance curve passes to the left of the $\rho=2$ circle. A capacitor, of course, having a negative reactance, subtracts at each frequency a certain amount of reactance from that of the antenna leaving the resistance component unaffected. This has the effect in the impedance-diagram representation of moving the antenna curve down vertically into the $\rho=2$ circle. In the admittance diagram, the effect is to rotate the entire curve counterclockwise. Here, both the conductance and susceptance values are affected by the addition of the capacitor in series. It might be suspected that the maximum bandwidth could be obtained by moving the impedance curve so that it falls along a diameter; i.e., where the $\rho=2$ circle would intercept the maximum arc. However, this is not the case, because of the spacing of the

Fig. 15 Fig. 16

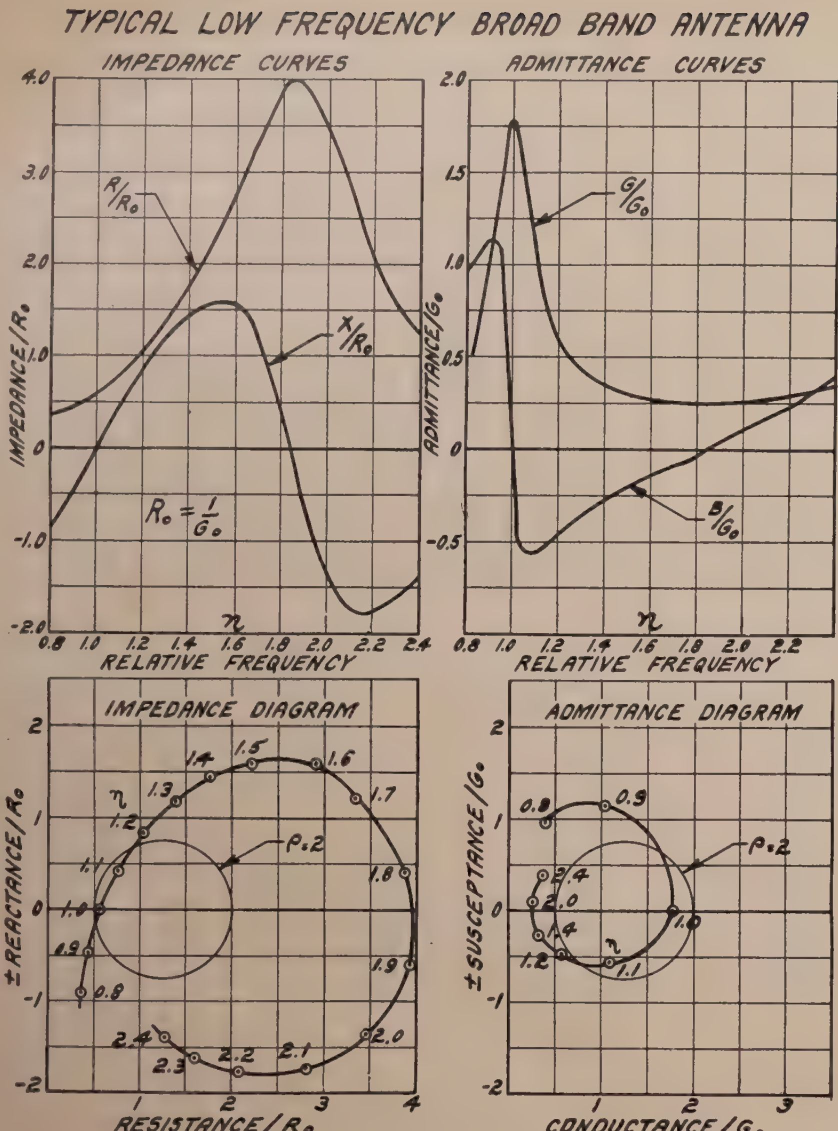


Fig. 17 Fig. 18

Figs. 15–18—Impedance-admittance characteristics of a typical low-frequency antenna, illustrating the four types of representation of data.

Fig. 19 Fig. 22

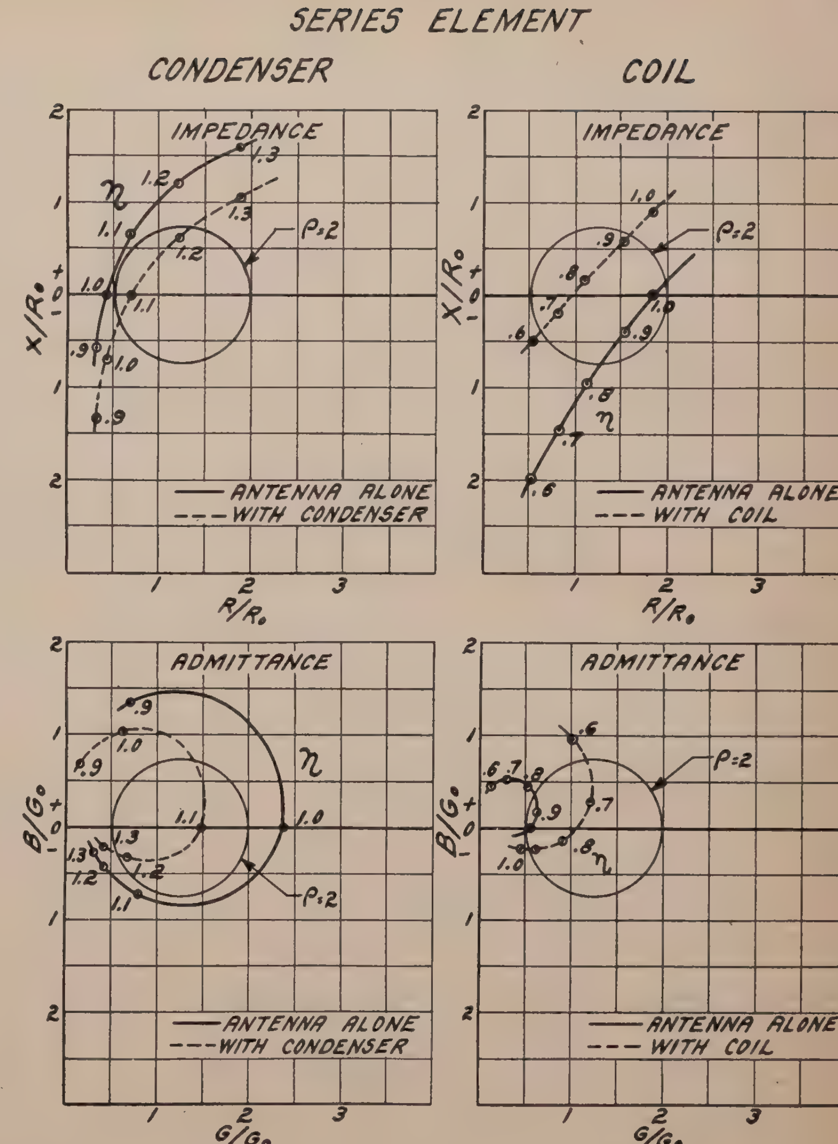


Fig. 20 Fig. 23

Figs. 19 and 20, 22 and 23—Transformation of antenna curve in complex plane by the addition of a capacitor or coil in series.

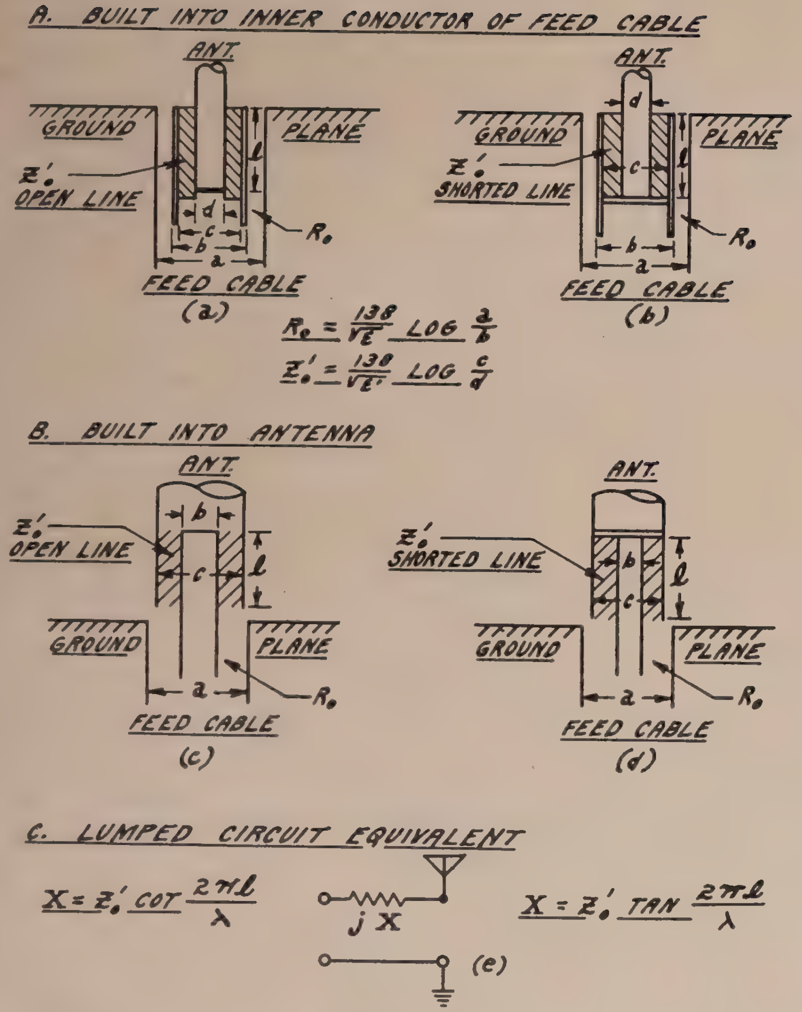
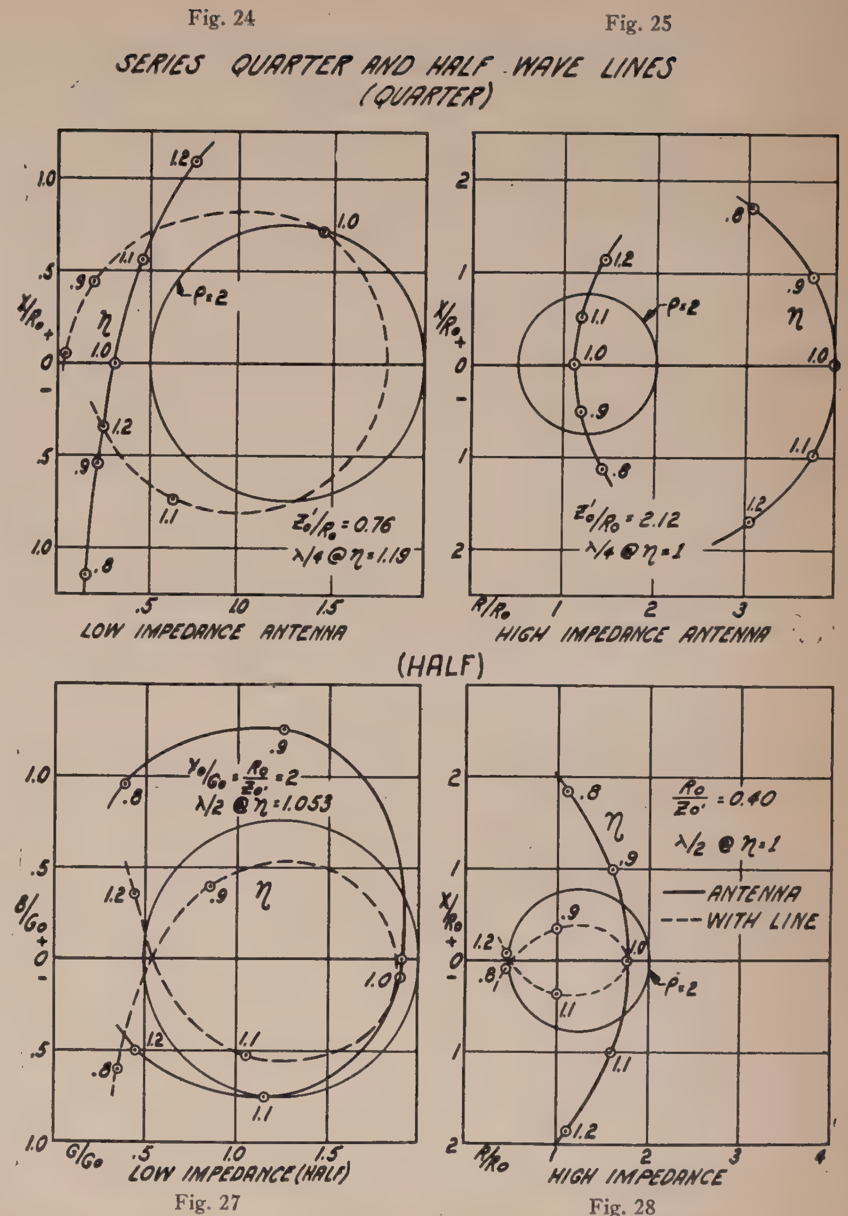


Fig. 21—Possible construction methods for series reactance element added to antenna.



Figs. 24 and 25, 27 and 28—Effect on antenna curve in the complex plane of the addition of a series or tandem quarter- or half-wave line.

frequency points. From the definition of bandwidth $\Delta\eta/\eta_1$, it is seen that $\Delta\eta$ inside the $\rho=2$ circle increases more slowly than η_1, so that it is advantageous to place the curve slightly in the upper left-hand portion of the $\rho=2$ circle. As indicated, the bandwidth has been increased from 0 per cent to some 17 per cent by the capacitor, the frequency range being $\eta=1.05$ to $\eta=1.23$.

In Fig. 21, parts (a), (c), and (e) show the schematic construction and diagram of a series capacitor or electrically short, open-circuited, transmission line. Parts (a) and (c) show two possible methods of design, one inside the inner conductor[4] of the feed cable R_0, and the other inside the antenna itself.

If $Z_A=R_A+jX_A$ is the impedance of the antenna, then addition of the series impedance jX will result in the feed cable R_0 seeing a load impedance given by

$$Z_L = Z_A + jX = R_A + j(X_A + X) \tag{35}$$

where for an open-circuited line X is

$$X = -Z_0' \cot\theta = -Z_0' \cot 2\pi(l/\lambda). \tag{36}$$

For small electrical lengths

$$B = -1/X = \omega C(\text{eff}) = [\tan 2\pi(l/\lambda)]/Z_0'$$
$$\simeq \sqrt{L/C}\,\omega\sqrt{LC}\,l \tag{37}$$

or

$$C(\text{eff}) = (Cl) \tag{38}$$

where, of course, C is the electrostatic capacitance per unit length, and l the length of the line.

2. *Series Coil*

The effect of a coil is just the opposite to that of a capacitor, as can be seen from Figs. 22 and 23, in that it adds reactance to the antenna impedance. The coil works best when the impedance curve passes to the right of the $\rho=2$ circle, so that the curve can be moved up into the matching region. In this particular case, the original curve had a bandwidth of some 24 per cent, while with the coil the bandwidth has been increased to approximately 46 per cent. The reason for this large increase in bandwidth is that the lower-frequency part of the curve is being pushed into the $\rho=2$ circle, increasing $\Delta\eta$ and decreasing η_1 simultaneously.

In Fig. 21, parts (b), (d), and (e) show possible construction details of a series coil. These figures are identical to those for a series capacitor, except that the transmission line is short-circuited.

The load impedance for this case is then

$$Z_L = Z_A + jX = R_A + j(X_A + X) \tag{39}$$

where

$$X = Z_0' \tan\theta = Z_0' \tan 2\pi(l/\lambda). \tag{40}$$

For small electrical lengths

$$X = \omega L(\text{eff}) = \sqrt{L/C}\,\omega\sqrt{LC} \tag{41}$$

or

$$L(\text{eff}) = (Ll) \tag{42}$$

where L is the inductance per unit length and l the length of the line.

[4] H. Salinger, "A coaxial filter for vestigial-sideband transmission in television," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 29, pp. 115–120; March, 1941.

3. *Series Quarter-Wave Lines*

The properties of quarter-wave lines have been used extensively as spot frequencies, but have received relatively little attention over a range of frequencies. Figs. 24 and 25 give a rather representative picture of the behavior of quarter-wave lines on a resonant low-impedance antenna and a high-impedance antiresonant antenna. As can be seen, a quarter-wave line carries low impedances into high impedances, and vice versa. It may be noted that matching down produces greater bandwidth than matching up; i.e., it is more difficult to match a low impedance to a high constant resistance than a high impedance to a low constant resistance. This seems reasonable if one remembers that the low impedances shown here produce a much higher average standing-wave ratio on the cable R_0 than the high impedances. The crowding of the standing-wave ratio circles near the origin causes the impedances in this region to appear easily matched because of their nearness to the $\rho=2$ circle, but usually, their standing-wave ratios are much higher than impedances far to the right of the $\rho=2$ circle.

In Fig. 24, the cable of characteristic impedance $Z_0'=0.76R_0$ was made a quarter wavelength long at $\eta=1.19$ instead of $\eta=1$, so that the resulting curve would be more symmetrical about the real axis. This is necessary because the original antenna curve was not symmetrical. If the antenna curve were symmetrical, as in Fig. 25, then the line can be chosen a quarter wavelength long at $\eta=1$.

In Fig. 26, parts (a) and (c) show the addition of a line of characteristic impedance Z_0' in series or tandem with the antenna. The antenna impedance Z_A is transformed through the line as given by the transmission-line formula (35). Z_{AA}' is then the impedance terminating the feed cable R_0. In the example shown, the electrical length is near 90 degrees at the center of the frequency band, hence the term quarter-wave line.

4. *Half-Wave Line*

Figs. 27 and 28 give the typical behavior of a half-wave line when used with a resonant and antiresonant antenna. In the case of a resonant antenna (susceptance slope with respect to η negative), the characteristic impedance of the line is $Z_0'=R_0/2$; i.e., less than R_0, while for an antiresonant antenna (reactance slope negative), $Z_0'=2.5R_0$; i.e., greater than R_0. Varying the characteristic impedance of the half-wave line causes the tie point to vary along the real axis. In the examples shown, the tie point was made near the $\rho=2$ circle for maximum bandwidth. Again, to take care of the slight dissymmetry of the antenna curve with respect to the real axis, the cable in Fig. 27 was made half wave at $\eta=1.053$. This caused the lower frequency points to bend downward more than the higher frequency points upward.

There is a remarkable resemblance in Fig. 27 of the half-wave line to a parallel-resonant circuit. A parallel circuit affects only the susceptance values of the antenna,

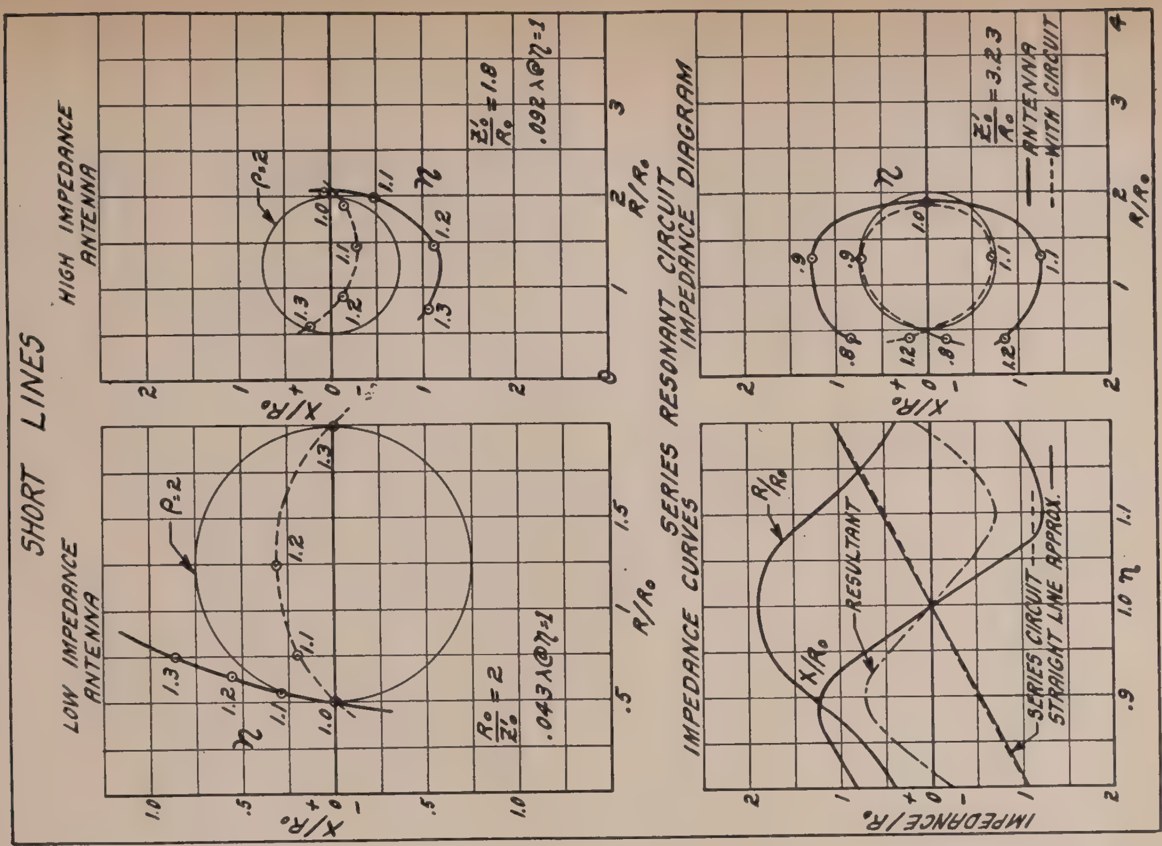


Fig. 29 Fig. 30 Fig. 31 Fig. 32

Figs. 29–32—Illustration of electrically short series line and series-resonant circuits effect on antenna curve.

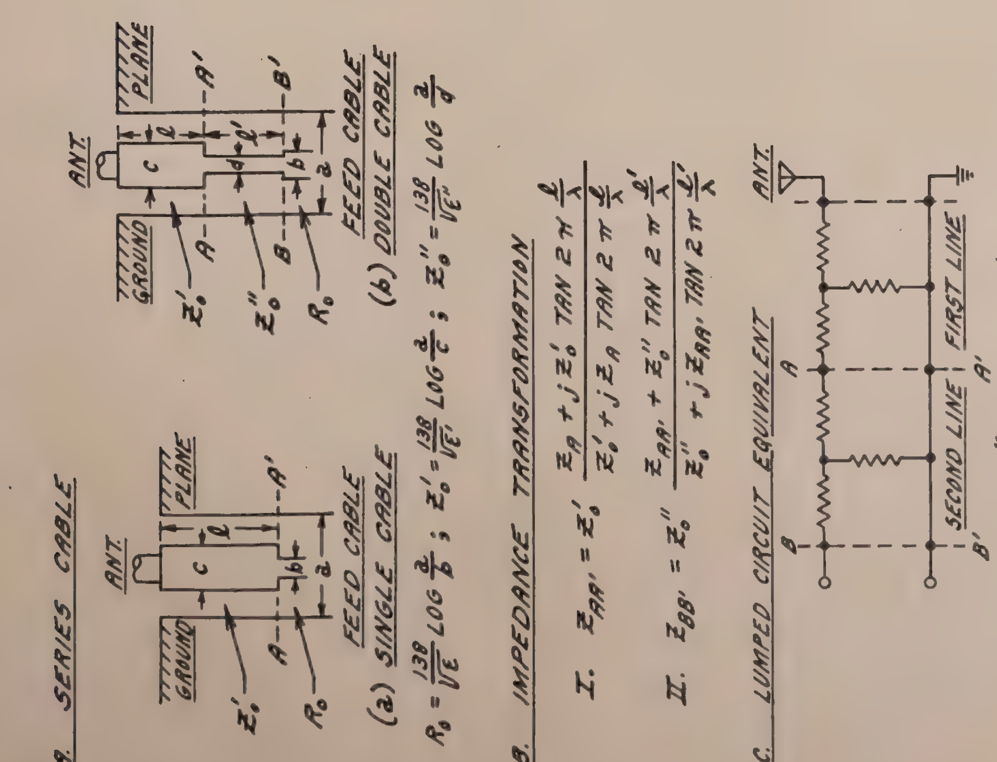


Fig. 26—Schematic drawing, impedance transformation, and circuit diagram of series cables added to antenna.

leaving the conductance values unchanged. In this case, the line cancels susceptance like a parallel circuit, while affecting the conductance values only slightly.

In Fig. 28, the half-wave line resembles a series-resonant circuit, in that reactance values are very strongly affected while resistance values remain rather constant. These facts will become more evident when parallel and series circuits are examined.

A half-wave line is connected to the antenna in the same fashion as the quarter-wave line, the only difference being that the electrical length is increased to 180 degrees.

5. *Short Lines*

Figs. 29 and 30 give two examples of the use of short lines; i.e., lines less than, say, 0.125λ long. Here the lines bend the antenna curve into the $\rho=2$ circle. They are especially useful when only a slight rotation of the antenna curve is needed to bring it into the $\rho=2$ circle. For those who are familiar with the circular form of an impedance chart, these short lines can be calculated rapidly by a little manipulation.

6. *Series-Resonant Circuits*

Figs. 31 and 32 show the use of a series-resonant circuit with an antiresonant antenna. In this case, the series circuit is a cable rather than a lumped circuit. Fig. 31 gives a very rapid method of determining the electrical length and characteristic impedance of this cable to be used. It is evident that, if the reactances of the two points for which the resistive component was 0.50 were cancelled to zero by a series circuit, the antenna curve would be partially collapsed into the $\rho=2$ circle and the maximum bandwidth obtainable with a single series element would result. Following this scheme, Fig. 31 illustrates the application of this method.

The values of the antenna's reactance are determined for the frequencies where the resistive component is 0.50. These two points must then be cancelled to zero, so that the series circuit must pass through the reactance points of the opposite sign. A straight line is then drawn through these second two points as a first approximation to the series circuit. The intersection of this line with the real axis then gives the resonant electrical length and the characteristic impedance can be determined from the slope by calculation. In this case where the antenna curve is symmetrical, the resonant electrical length is, of course, at $\eta=1$, while the characteristic impedance is seen by calculation to be $Z_0'=3.23\ R_0$. The dashed curve gives the true series-circuit curve for comparison with the straight line, while the dashed-dot curve gives the resulting, partially cancelled antenna's reactance curve.

A series-resonant circuit in series with the antenna is constructed in exactly the same manner as a series capacitor, coil, or short line. All that need be done is to increase the electrical length to 90 degrees in the case of an open-circuited line, or 180 degrees for a short-circuited line. The impedance transformation is the same as given by (35), (36), and (40).

7. *Parallel Coils and Capacitors*

(*a*) *General Use:* Figs. 33 and 34 give the admittance counterpart of a series capacitor; i.e., a parallel coil. As is evident, the effect of a parallel coil in the admittance diagram is the same as a series capacitor in the impedance diagram, and vice versa. The same is true of a parallel capacitor and a series coil as given in Figs. 35 and 36. All techniques of choosing series coils, and capacitors in the impedance diagram apply to choosing parallel capacitors and coils in the admittance diagram.

In Fig. 37, parts (a), (b), (c), and (d) give possible schematic constructions and diagram of the addition of a parallel reactance to an antenna. As can be seen, this is the ordinary stub construction in impedance tuners, supported lines, etc.

Let Y_A be the admittance of the antenna, then the admittance transformation is

$$Y_L = Y_A + jB = G_A + j(B_A + B) \tag{43}$$

where

$$B=[\tan 2\pi(l/\lambda)]/Z_0' \quad \text{or} \quad B=[-\cot 2\pi(l/\lambda)]/Z_0' \tag{44}$$

for the open and short-circuited stub line.

(*b*) *Bazooka Design:* If a balanced load is of the type given in Fig. 33, where by the cancellation of susceptance by a parallel coil or line element, the antenna curve can be moved into the matching circle, then this parallel coil or line element can be made the isolating stubs of the bazooka. In this case, it will mean that the stubs are less than a quarter wavelength long, and so the bazooka will be much shorter in physical length than usual.

8. *Parallel-Resonant Circuit* (*Stub*)

(*a*) *General Use:* Stubs have been used to match antennas for some time, but the broad-banding property of a single stub seems not to have been exploited. This circuit is the identical admittance counterpart of a series circuit, and is designed in exactly the same way. A resonant antenna has a negative susceptance slope with respect to frequency, which can be cancelled with a properly chosen circuit over a considerable range of frequencies. The most favorable antenna curve is one which has a resonant conductive component just less than 2, as shown in Fig. 38.

In the example shown, the antenna curve is not symmetrical, lying slightly more in the upper half of the complex plane than in the lower, so that the resonant electrical length of the stub will not be at $\eta=1$ as seen in Fig. 39. Here again a straight-line approximation is used for the parallel circuit in choosing the electrical length and characteristic impedance. The susceptances have been cancelled to zero for the points where the conductive component is 0.50, tying the admittance curve on the real axis.

(*b*) *Bazooka Design:* Parallel-circuit or stub matching of the type illustrated is ideally suited for bazooka matching and balancing of a balanced resonant antenna

Fig. 33 Fig. 35

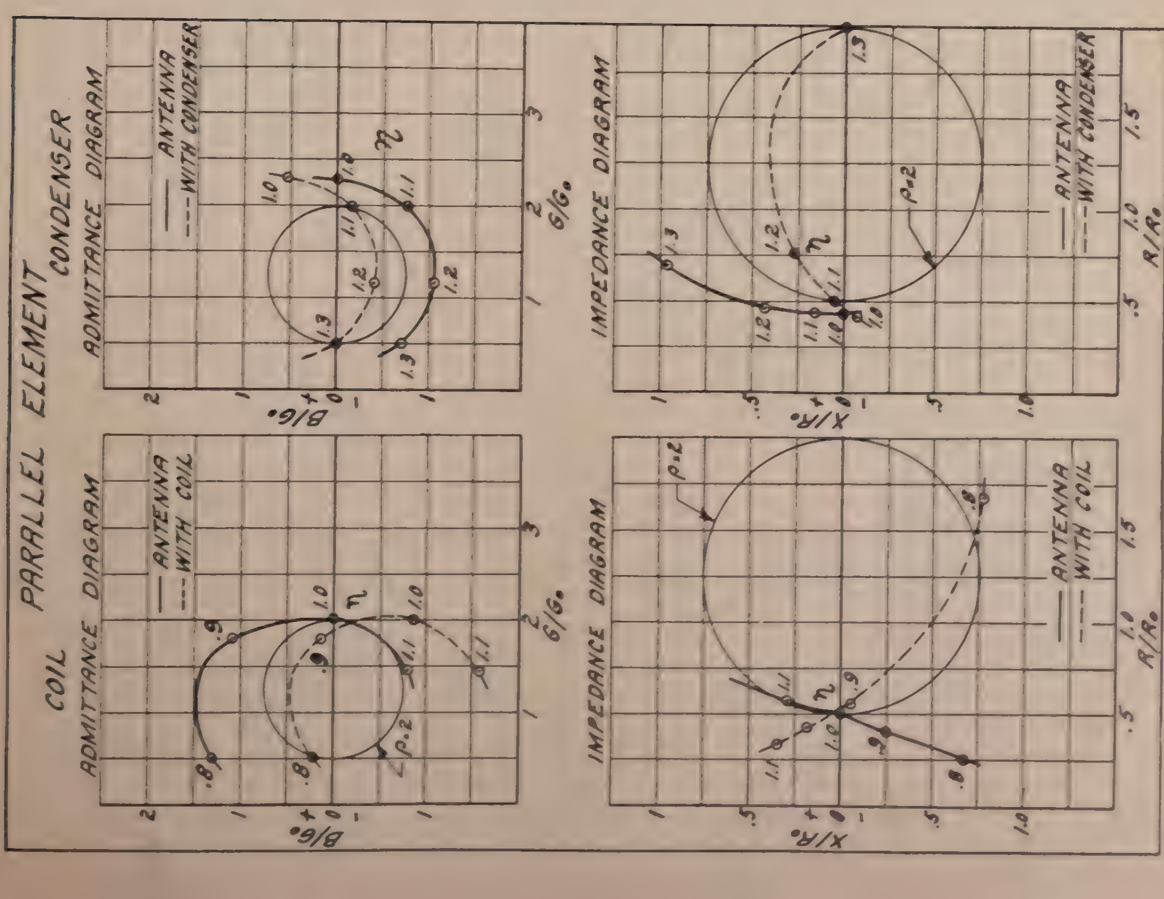


Fig. 34 Fig. 36

Figs. 33–36—Transformation of antenna impedance-admittance curve by addition of parallel coil or capacitor.

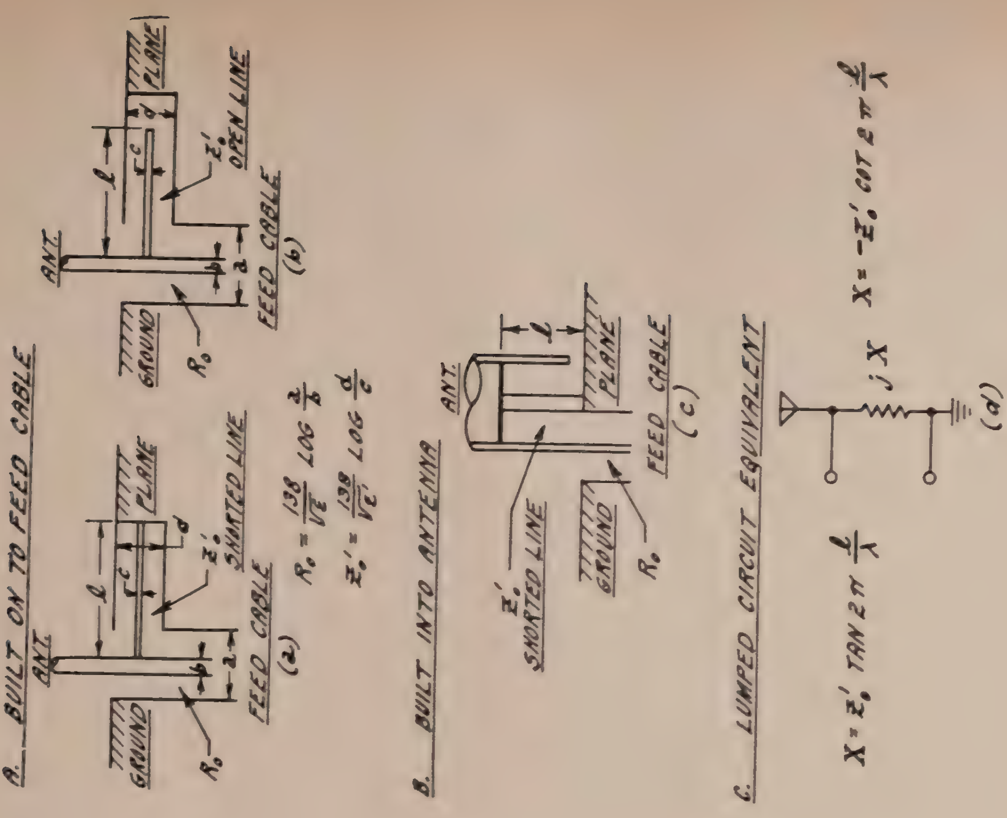


Fig. 37—Suggested construction of parallel reactance that may be added to antenna.

Fig. 39

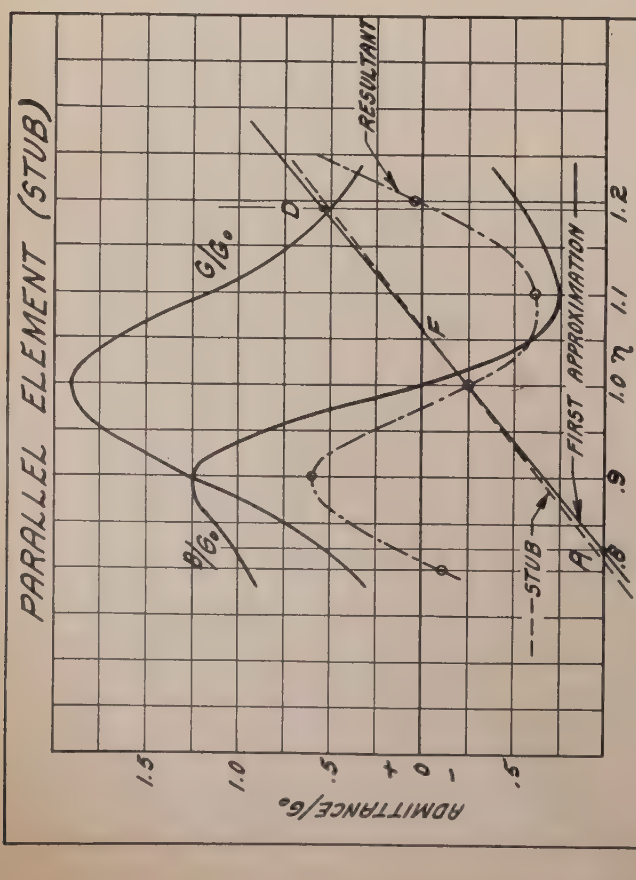
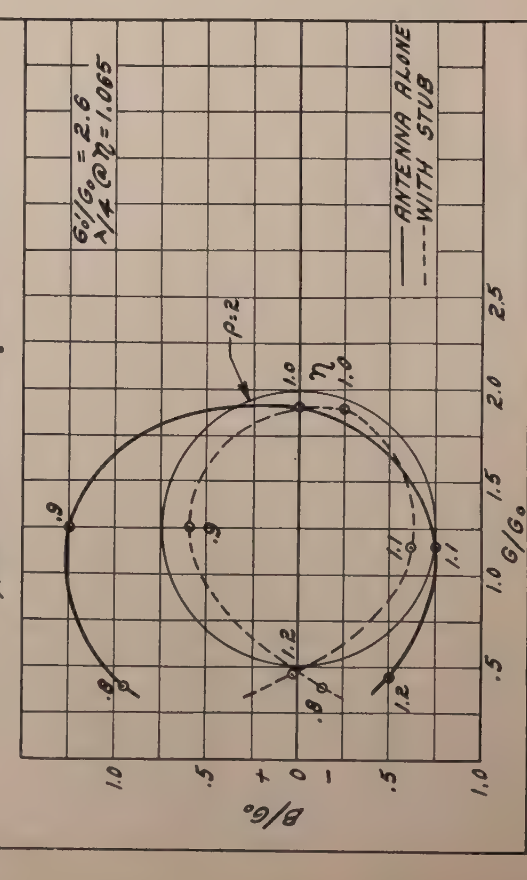


Fig. 38



Figs. 38 and 39—Matching a resonant antenna over a range of frequencies by means of a stub or parallel-resonant circuit.

Fig. 41

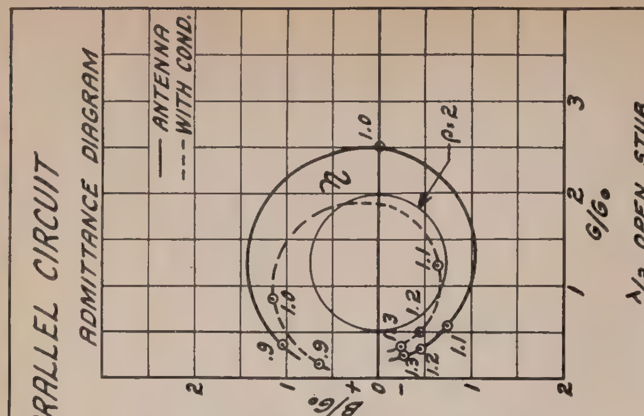


Fig. 40

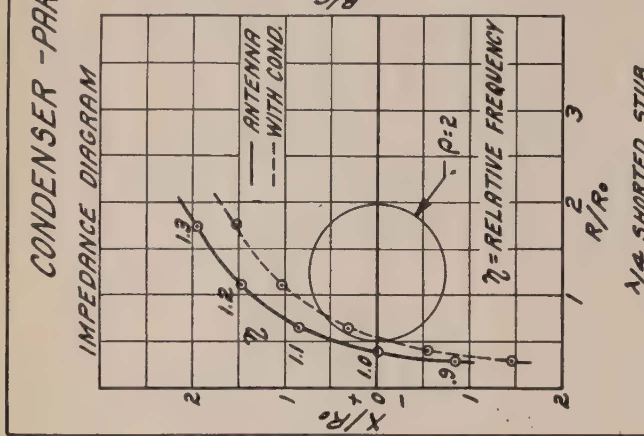


Fig. 43

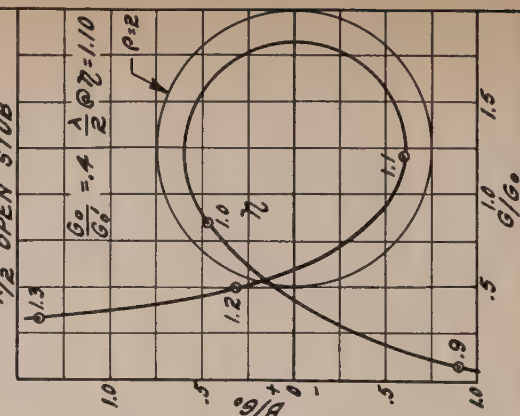
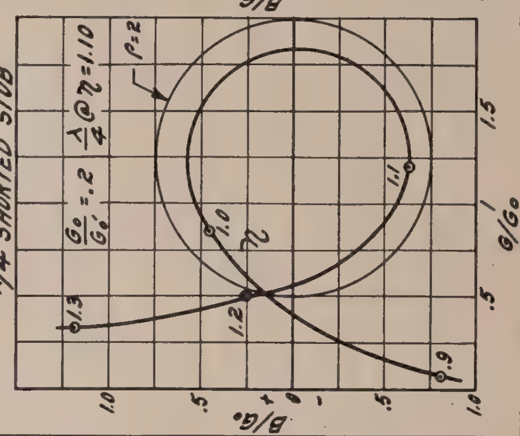


Fig. 42



Figs. 40–43—Steps in synthesis of a two-element (series-capacitor parallel stub) network used to match a resonant antenna over a range of frequencies.

to an unbalanced line. Since the characteristic impedance of the stubs required to cancel susceptance is rather low, the usual problem of making the isolating stubs of the bazooka of high characteristic impedance is eliminated. The ideal antenna curve for this type of matching is one that has a broad admittance characteristic and a resonant conductance component slightly less than 2.

C. Two-Element Networks

1. *Series Capacitor—Parallel Circuit (Stub)*

(*a*) *General Use:* Figs. 40, 41, and 42 give the steps in synthesizing a series capacitor, parallel-circuit (stub) matching network. This particular antenna has a low resonant resistance so that it does not pass through any portion of the $\rho=2$ circle. By adding a capacitor, the curve is, of course, moved down toward the $\rho=2$ circle in the impedance diagram and rotated counterclockwise in the admittance diagram. The added capacitor is of such value that the curve is made to cut the real axis in the admittance diagram just inside the $\rho=2$ circle, and no value of conductive component is greater than 2. This sets up the curve for the addition of the parallel stub which, in turn, is chosen in the usual manner. The bandwidth here has been increased from 0 to some 24 per cent.

There is one rather objectional fact in Fig. 42, and that is the value of the characteristic impedance of the stub that is needed ($G_0=0.2G_0'$; $Z_0'=0.2\,R_0$). The value of Z_0' is rather small. If R_0 were 50 ohms, Z_0' would be only 10 ohms, a rather difficult line to be made flexible. This low characteristic-impedance problem can be overcome by making use of the electrical length of the cable. The slope of the susceptance curve of a transmission line is a function of both the characteristic impedance and electrical length. Instead of using a quarter-wave short-circuited line as the parallel circuit, a half-wave open-circuited line could be used just as well. Now by doubling the resonant electrical length, the effective characteristic impedance has also been doubled. This is illustrated in Fig. 43 where a half-wave open-circuited line of characteristic impedance $Z_0'=0.4\,R_0$ is used instead of a quarter-wave short-circuited line of characteristic impedance $Z_0'=0.2\,R_0$. It would then follow from the example given that the characteristic impedance of this line would be $0.4\,R_0$ or 20 ohms, a figure that can be easily realized in practice.

Fig. 44, parts (a) and (b), shows two possible constructions of a series-parallel impedance combination or L-section as seen in (c). The impedance and admittance transformations are given by the indicated equations.

2. *Parallel Circuit (Stub)—Quarter-Wave Line*

(*a*) *General Use:* This combination works well with an antenna whose resonant resistance is rather high; or in terms of admittance, whose resonant conductance is low, as can be seen from Figs. 45, 46, 47, and 48. The admittance curve then lies in the left-hand portion of the $\rho=2$ circle in the admittance diagram, as can be seen in Fig. 46. If a parallel circuit or stub be added in the usual manner, the curve collapses as pictured in Fig. 47. Finally, if a quarter-wave line is attached in series, the curve is moved over into the center of the $\rho=2$ circle as given in Fig. 48. A little systematic trial and error will determine the best combination of stub and line for maximum bandwidth. Here, approximately 46 per cent is achieved by the combination.

Fig. 44, part (d), gives the schematic construction of this stub-tandem line combination along with a circuit diagram (e) and the admittance-transformation equations.

(*b*) *Bazooka Design:* This two-element-network combination is exactly the one found in the bazooka, so the method presented here is probably the most important from a compact network-design standpoint. A resonant balanced antenna is certain to have a high resonant resistance as compared to the characteristic impedance of an ordinary coaxial feed cable, so that the admittance curve will lie in a favorable portion of the complex plane for matching. The quarter-wave line used is placed, in this case, on the unbalanced side of the bazooka.

3. *Parallel Circuit (Stub)—Half-Wave Line:*

(*a*) *General Use:* Figs. 49, 50, 51, and 52, give the method of synthesizing this combination. Here, it is desirable that the admittance curve lie in the right-hand portion of the $\rho=2$ circle. The parallel circuit is used to collapse the antenna admittance curve into the $\rho=2$ circle. This sets up the curve for a half-wave line which will then warp the ends of the curve back into the circle making a second tie at the right of the $\rho=2$ circle. As shown, the final bandwidth is well over 50 per cent.

(*b*) *Bazooka Design:* The physical arrangement for this combination is identical to the preceding stub—quarter-wave line method of matching. The length of line on the unbalanced side of the bazooka is simply increased from a quarter to a half wavelength.

4. *Quarter—Quarter-Wave Lines:*

This combination provides a very powerful method for matching antiresonant antennas. At first glance, the antenna curve given in Fig. 53 appears to be far from the $\rho=2$ circle. In Fig. 25, where a single quarter-wave line was added to an antiresonant antenna, only a very nominal bandwidth resulted. However, using the set-up idea again and not attempting to match into the $\rho=2$ circle at all with the first line, the addition of the second line gives more than the usual amount of bandwidth from a single line. This is seen in Fig. 54 where the resulting bandwidth is near 70 per cent.

5. *Half—Half-Wave Lines:*

Figs. 55 and 56 give the two steps used in determining the parameters of this pair of elements. In this case, the antenna curve is not symmetrical with respect to the real axis, so that the resulting curve after the addition of the two lines is an oddly wrapped affair. The scheme used is as follows: The first line ($Z_0'<R_0$) is picked such that the tie is well within the $\rho=2$ circle. Addition of the second line ($Z_0'>R_0$) ties the ends of the curve on the left, leaving the first tie loop just slightly expanded.

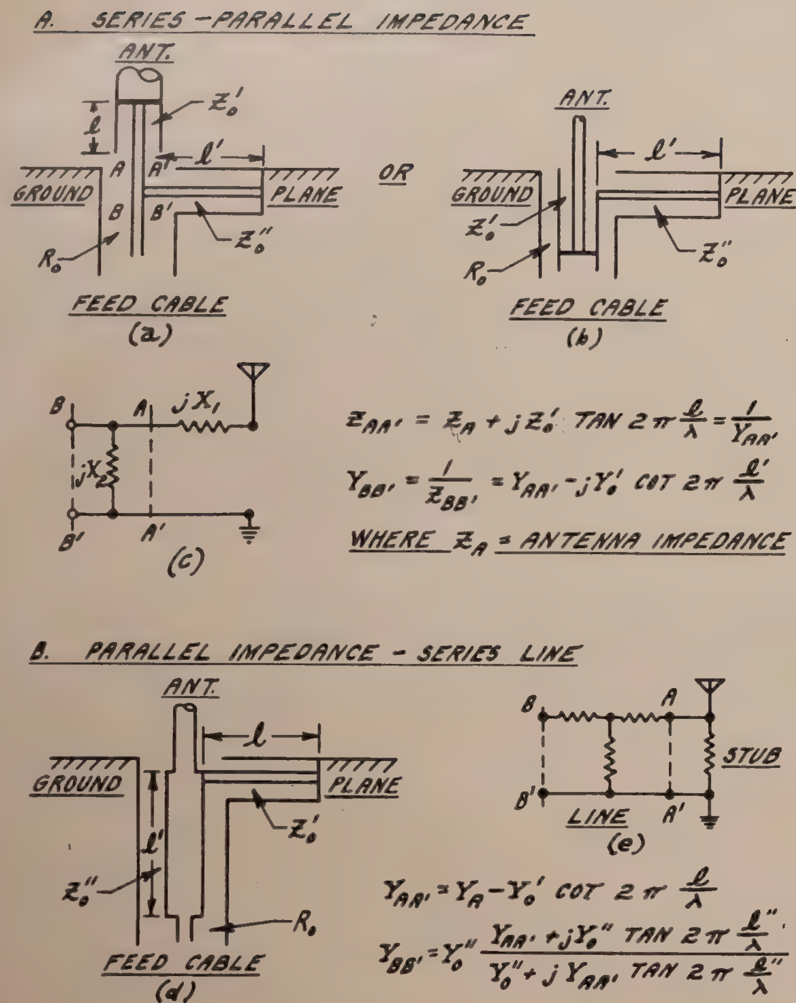


Fig. 44—Possible construction of several two-element networks.

Fig. 45 Fig. 46

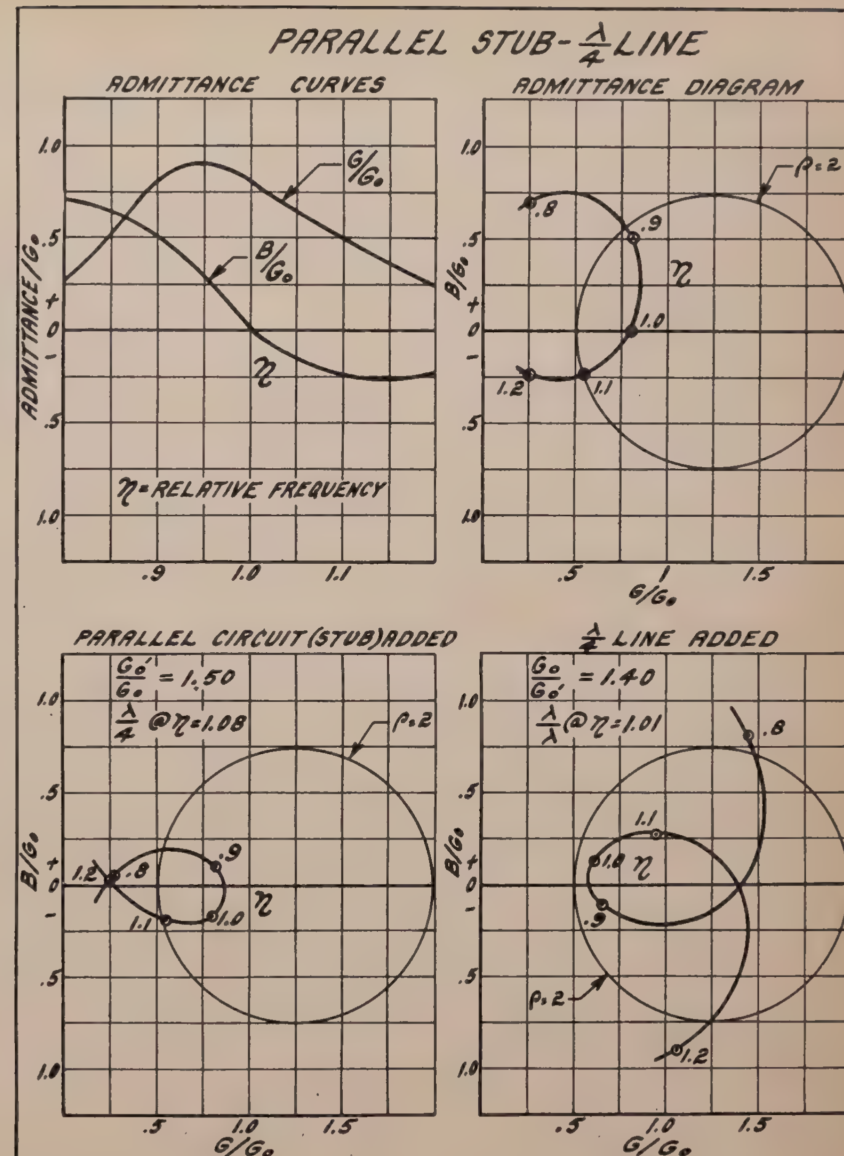


Fig. 47 Fig. 48

Figs. 45–48—Broad-band matching of a resonant antenna by means of a parallel stub—quarter-wave-line network.

Fig. 49 Fig. 50

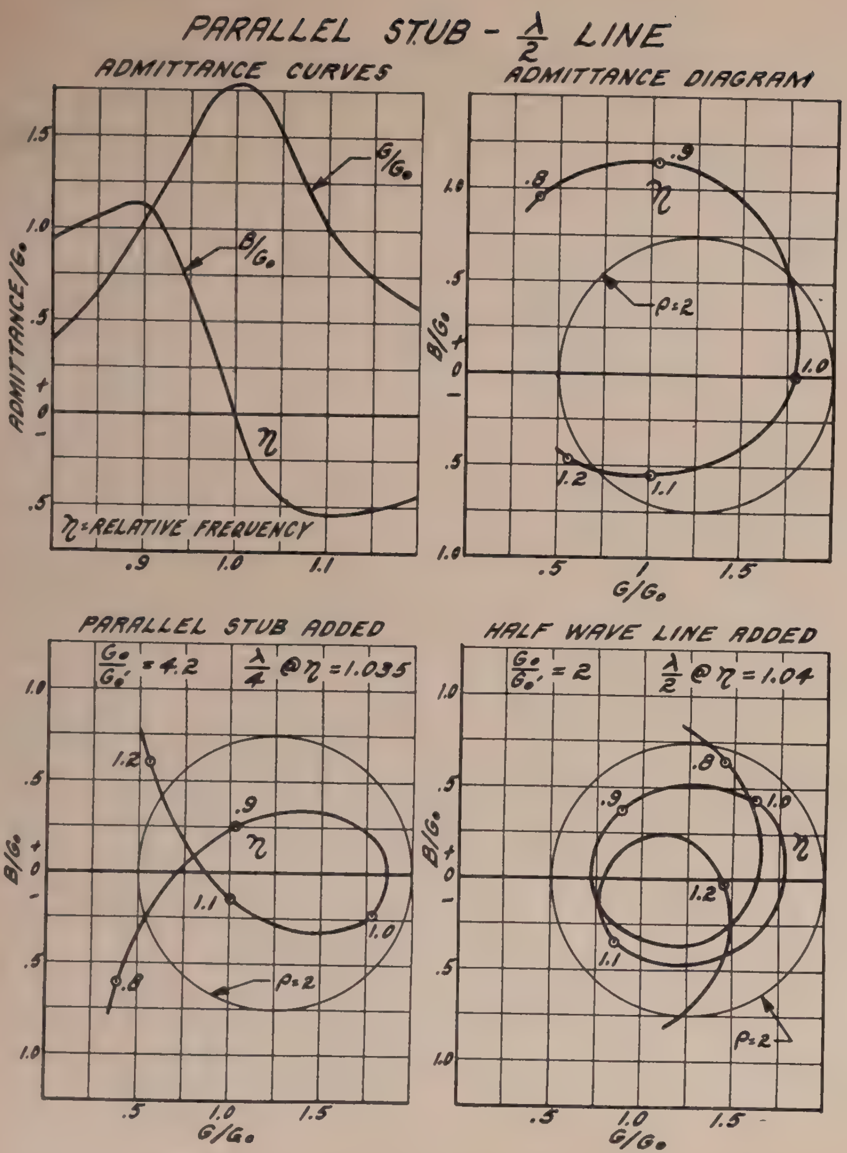


Fig. 51 Fig. 52

Figs. 49–52—Parallel stub—half-wave-line combination for matching a resonant antenna to feed cable over a wide range of frequencies.

Fig. 53 Fig. 55

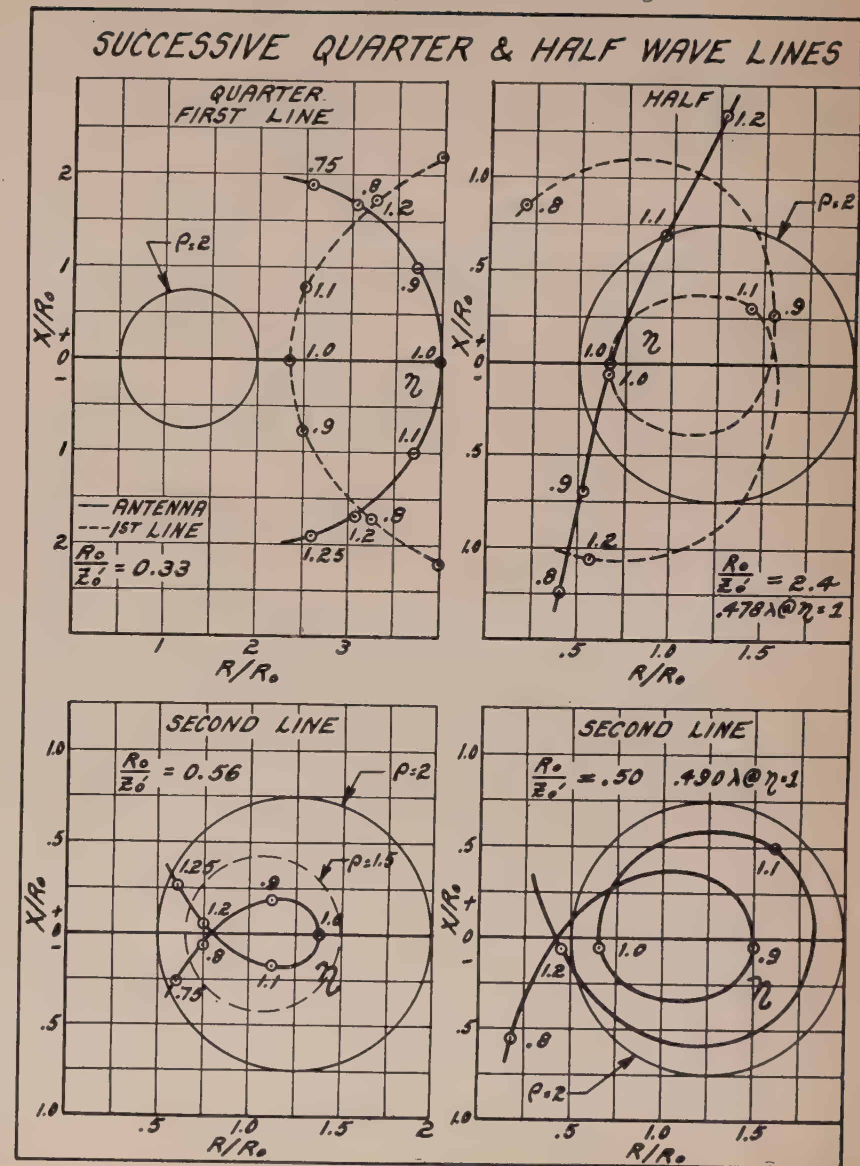


Fig. 54 Fig. 56

Figs. 53–56—Matching an antiresonant antenna by means of successive quarter-wave lines; and matching a resonant antenna by means of successive half-wave lines.

Fig. 57

Fig. 58

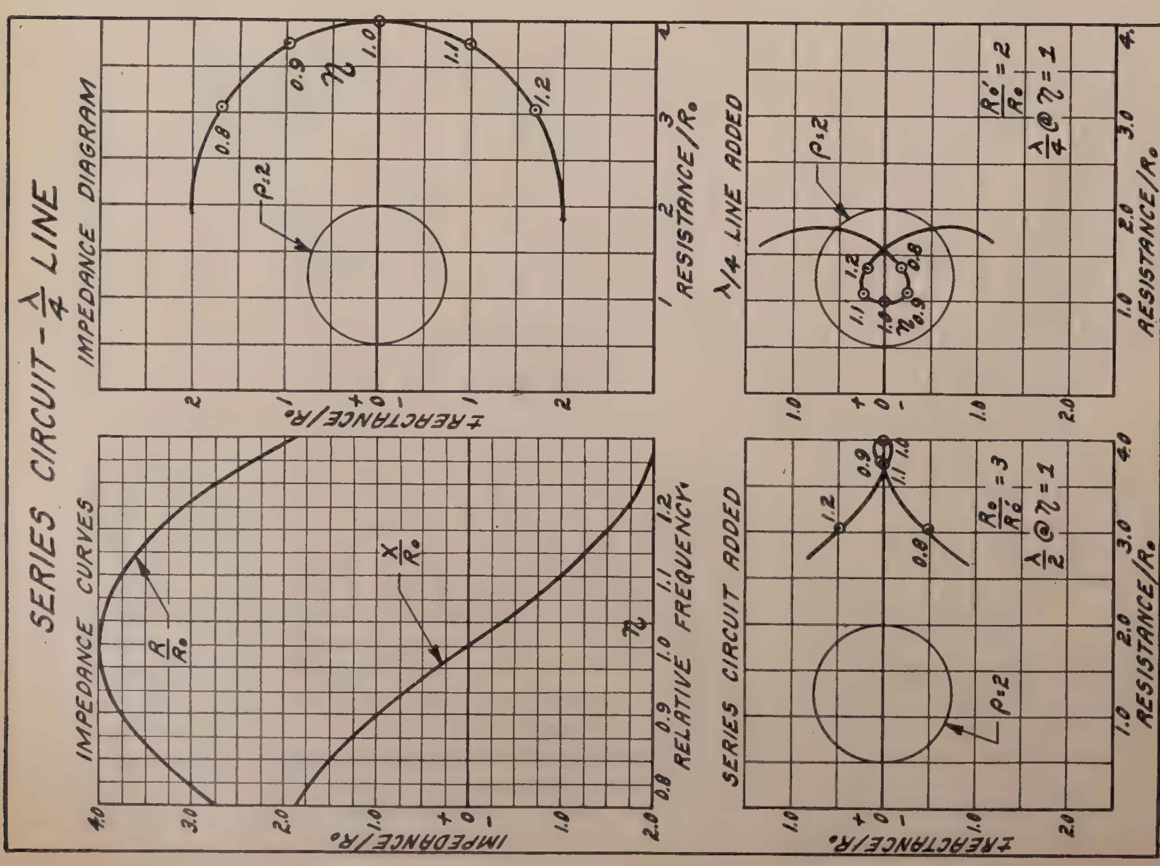


Fig. 59

Fig. 60

Figs. 57–60—Synthesis of a series circuit—quarter-wave-line network for matching an antiresonant antenna.

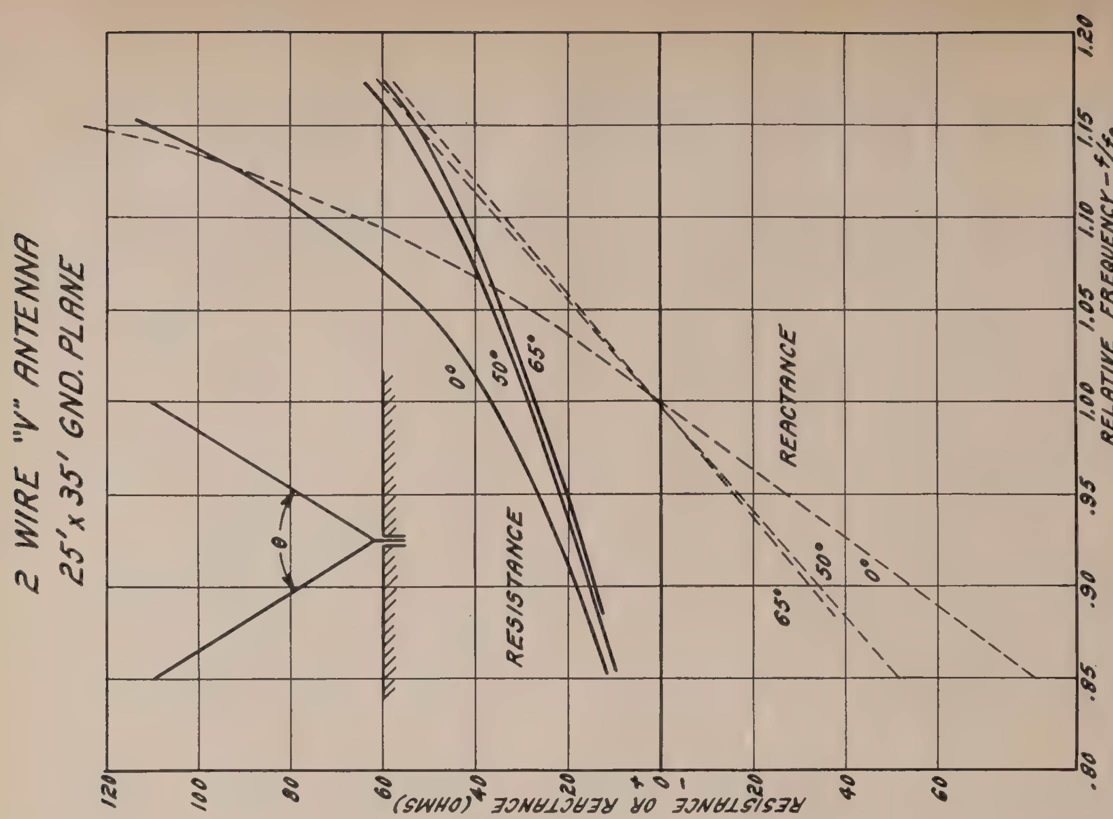


Fig. 61—Impedance of two-wire V antenna.

The method then reduces to one where the curve is alternately tied, first on the right, then on the left, and so on.

6. *Series Circuit—Quarter-Wave Line:*

As can be seen from Figs. 57, 58, 59, and 60, this network is the impedance analogue of the parallel-circuit quarter-wave line combination. Here the negative reactance slope with respect to frequency allows the antenna reactance to be cancelled with a series circuit, after which the resulting curve is moved into the $\rho=2$ circle with a quarter-wave line. Since the antenna curve is less sharply resonant around antiresonance, a large resulting bandwidth is achieved.

IV. Conclusions

The two-element networks presented in this paper allowed a resonably good antenna to be matched over a bandwidth of 35 per cent to 50 per cent with the mismatch limit not exceeding a standing-wave ratio of 2 to 1 on the given feed cable.

The position of the antenna curve with respect to the $\rho=2$ circle and the spacing of the frequency points is a more important consideration in matching than the original bandwidth.

While the matching methods in this paper are applied to portions of the antenna curve around resonance and antiresonance, they apply equally well to curves in any position in the complex plane.

It is very desirable in two-element network matching to use the first element of the network to set up the antenna curve for the second element whenever possible.

High impedances (i.e., impedances to the right of the $\rho=2$ circle in the impedance diagram) are more easily matched over a range of frequencies than low impedances.

Finally, the importance of the four types of graphical representation should be emphasized. They not only suggest the type of element to be added but furnish a very powerful guide in obtaining maximum bandwidth. By studying the effect of single elements graphically, combinations immediately suggest themselves. Perhaps the best method of synthesizing a matching network would be to use the graphical method in selecting the network combination, and then apply an analytical method to obtain the optimum values for the network parameters.

PART III. The Broad-Band Fan Antenna

A. S. Meier

I. Introduction

The development of a unique type of aircraft antenna, which is only in very limited use, has been selected to illustrate the practical applications of impedance measurement and matching techniques described in Parts I and II.

Measurement problems in the range of frequencies discussed in Part I involve lengths of 10 to 20 meters of transmission line for determining impedance. Antenna-design problems at these frequencies are subject to similar difficulties when dealing with large physical dimensions and are particularly troublesome when aircraft dimensions become comparable to wavelength. The problem of broad-band antennas in this range becomes even more involved since a structure of large cross section is usually required to secure the necessary bandwidth, and any sizable antenna structure immediately creates a serious aerodynamic problem.

The term "broad-band" used with reference to antennas under discussion refers to bandwidths of 25 to 50 per cent, a 2:1 range in frequency being equivalent to 100 per cent bandwidth. Anyone dealing with high-frequency antennas would probably designate bandwidths of this magnitude as relatively narrow band, since high-frequency antennas having several times this bandwidth can be conveniently constructed with reasonably small physical dimensions. However, at the frequency range under consideration, such bandwidths are unrealizable in practice because of the large dimensions involved.

The broad-band development problem under consideration requires an antenna system for transmitting purposes, the specifications precluding the use of mechanical tuning devices and requiring an impedance match to a 50-ohm feed line within a 2:1 standing-wave ratio. This problem, based only on the desired electrical characteristics, appears to be straight-forward from an engineering standpoint. The conventional antenna meeting these electrical requirements would be one having a large cross section such as a cylinder, cone, or ellipse.[5] Examination of the aerodynamic characteristics of such structures shows that the excessive air drag proves them impractical, and even a streamlined airfoil section of the required dimensions would result in an air drag of 75 to 100 pounds at modern aircraft speeds. The problem then becomes one of selecting an antenna with the necessary bandwidth qualities without unfavorable aerodynamic characteristics. At first glance, the electrical and aerodynamic specifications do not seem compatible, but a solution is presented which meets both requirements to a satisfactory degree.

Since structures of large dimensions are involved, the first step in simplifying the antenna structure is one of devising impedance-matching techniques to expand the useful bandwidth. The matching techniques outlined in Part II were devised for this purpose and prove extremely useful at the frequency range under consideration, where it is possible to improve the initial bandwidth by a factor of 2 or 3. The second step in securing the necessary bandwidth then becomes one of finding a suitable structure easily adapted to existing aircraft which has sufficiently broad resonance characteristics to meet bandwidth requirements when used with a matching network.

[5] F. E. Terman, "Radio Engineers' Handbook," McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York 18, N. Y., 1943, paragraph 36, p. 863.

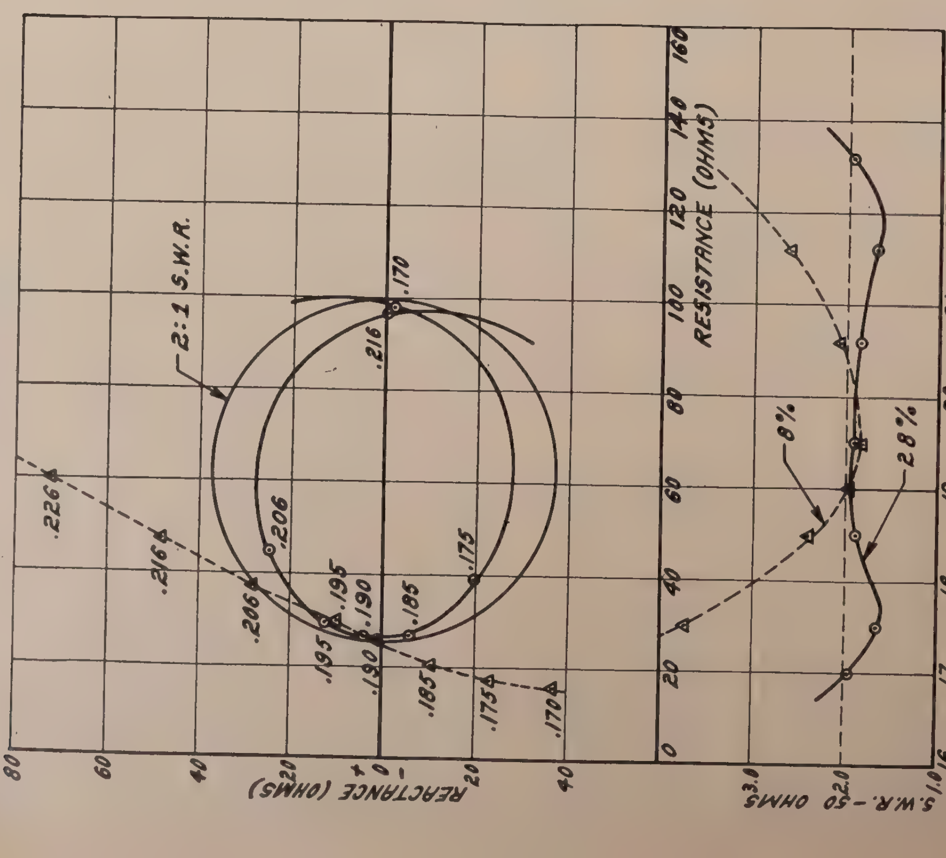


Fig. 62—Matched impedance of two-wire V antenna.

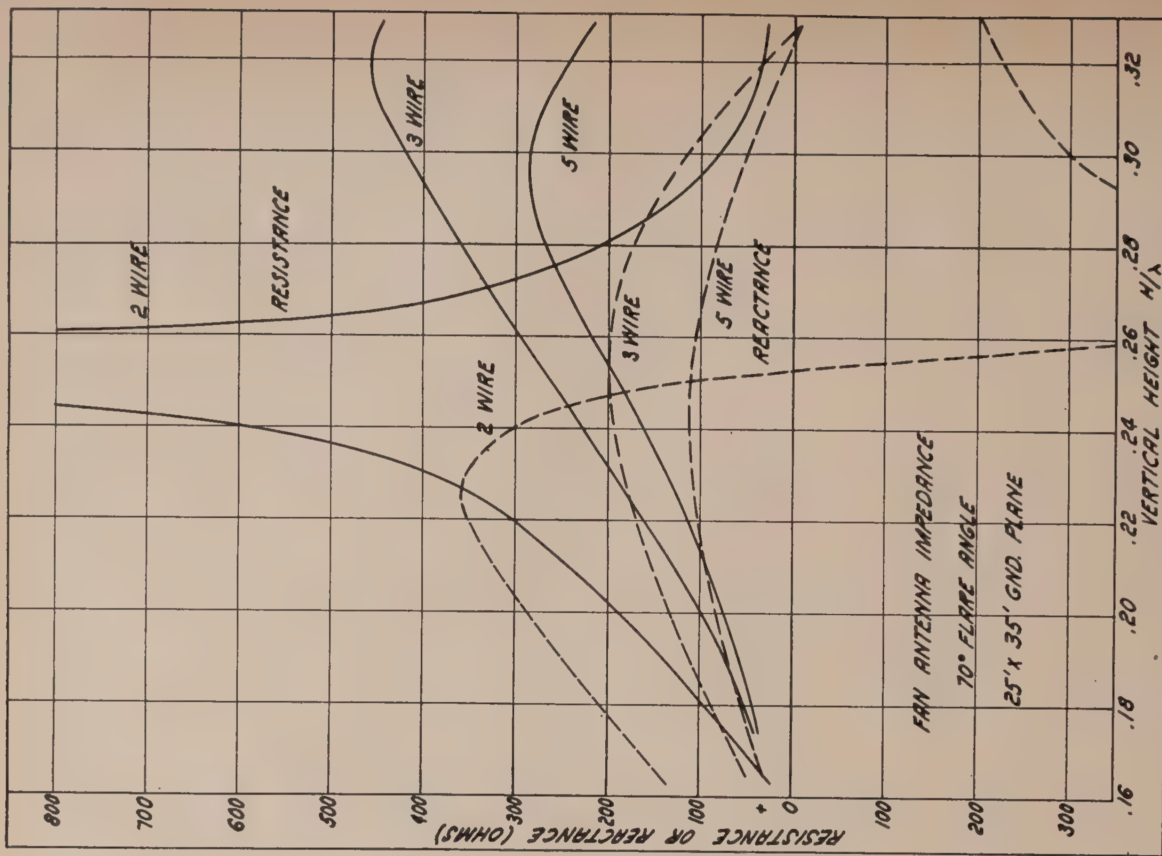


Fig. 63—Impedance of multiwire fan antenna.

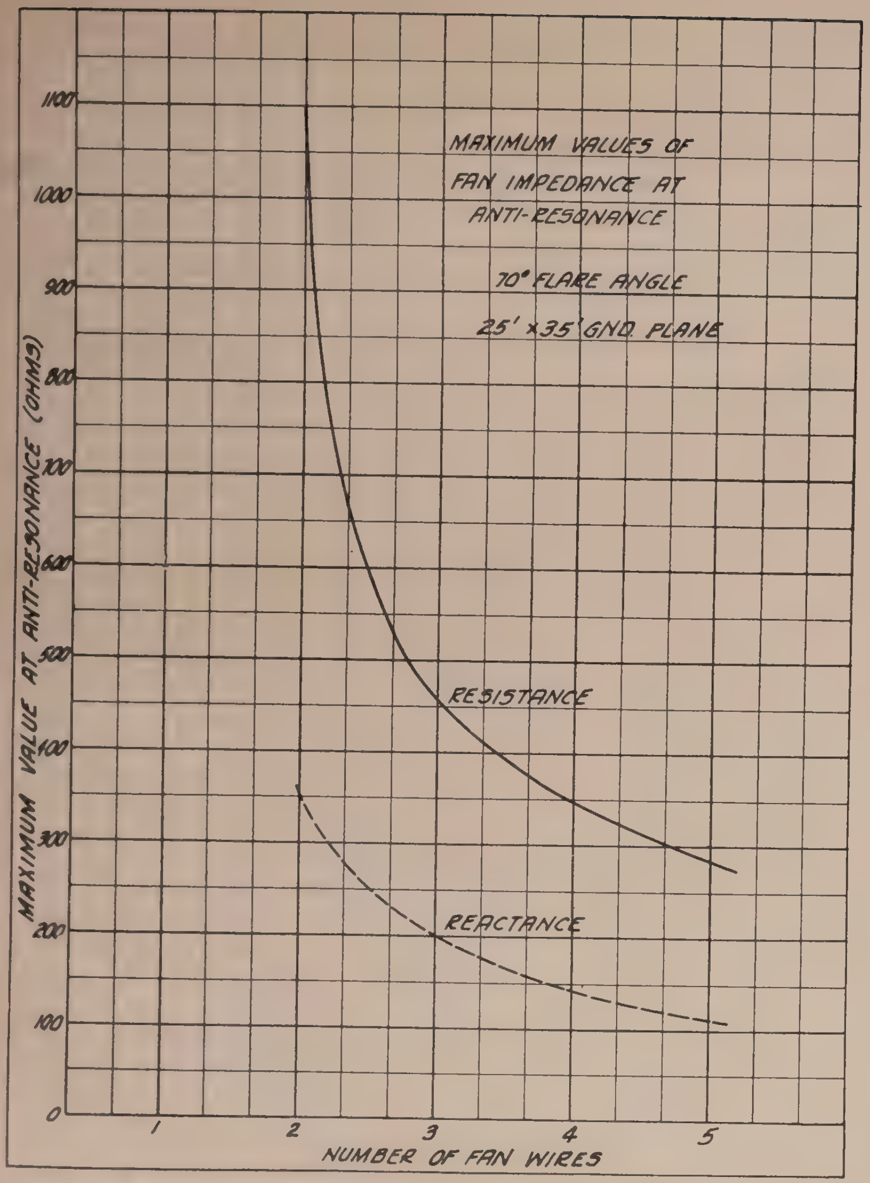


Fig. 64—Maximum impedance value of fan antennas near antiresonance.

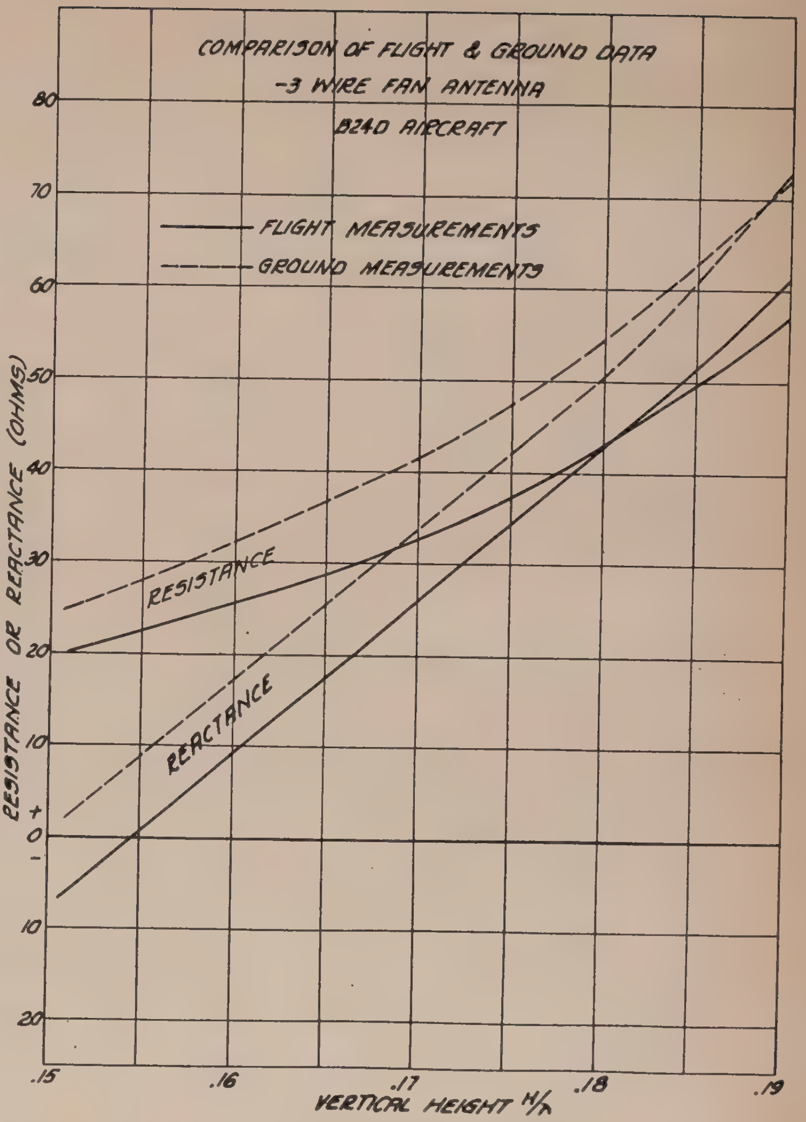


Fig. 67—Ground and flight impedance measurements—three-wire fan antenna.

II. V Antenna

A single wire and an appropriate matching network would be the most desirable antenna system from an aerodynamic standpoint, but unfortunately the impedance characteristics fall short of meeting bandwidth specifications, the application of matching techniques resulting in only 10 to 15 per cent bandwidth. A considerably greater bandwidth was found possible without an appreciable increase in air drag by use of the simple expedient of two wires instead of one in order to broaden the resonance characteristics.

Fig. 61 shows the impedance characteristics of the V antenna plotted on a relative frequency basis. Resistance and reactance are shown for flare angles of 0 degrees, 50 degrees, and 65 degrees for a symmetrical antenna normal to a flat ground plane. A double wire represented by $\theta=0$ degrees is quite sharp in its resonant properties, and it is evident that considerable improvement is obtained by the use of two wires flared at an appropriate angle. The flare angle is not critical and there is a gradual transition as the angle is increased, with relatively little gain at the larger angles.

In Fig. 62, the dotted lines indicate the basic impedance of a V antenna consisting of two wires fed in phase and flared at an angle of 65 degrees. Application of a suitable matching network shown by the solid curves results in a final bandwidth of 28 per cent as compared to an initial bandwidth of only 8 per cent. Matching is accomplished by a parallel stub. In this case, the resonant resistance is ideal for the stub application and a substantial increase in useful bandwidth is possible using only a single element.

This type of antenna can be conveniently mounted on an aircraft, with the matching section located at the feed point inside the fuselage, and the air drag is not appreciably greater than that of a single wire which is ordinarily used for communication purposes. Requirements for modern high-speed aircraft can be met by this design for moderate bandwidths.

III. Fan Antenna

Greater bandwidths than that obtained from a two-wire system were required in several applications of special equipment for bombardment aircraft. A two-wire antenna, being a considerable improvement over a single wire, led to the impedance investigation of additional wires. Fig. 63 shows the characteristics of the fan type of antenna consisting of two to five wires. The two-wire fan has a very steep resonance curve, and by adding a third wire the resistance at antiresonance is reduced from approximately 1200 to 500 ohms, with a corresponding improvement in reactance. It will be noticed that further addition of wires results in a greater improvement, but the net gain per wire falls off quite rapidly as the number of wires is increased. To improve upon a five-wire antenna, several more wires must be added to improve substantially the characteristics shown.

Fig. 64, derived from the previous figure, shows the maximum resistance and reactance through antiresonance as a convenient yardstick of the bandwidth function, which shows that the gain falls off rapidly as the number of wires is increased. Extrapolating on the curve will approximate the relative improvement over the single wire, and almost as great an improvement results in going from a 2- to a 3-wire antenna. For all practical purposes it is not necessary to exceed 3 or 4 wires to meet any reasonable requirements, and relatively little gain is obtained at the expense of further complicating the antenna structure.

The fan antenna finally evolved for bomber-aircraft installation is shown in Fig. 65 and consists of three

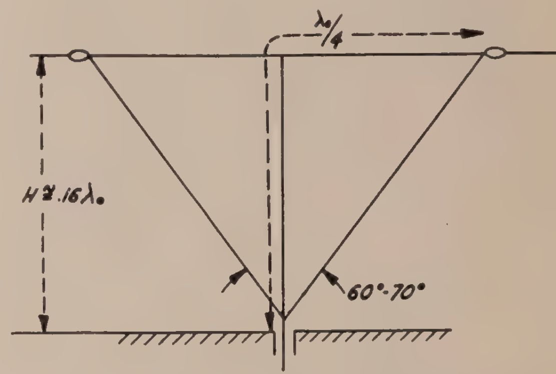


Fig. 65—Prototype three-wire fan antenna showing approximate dimensions.

radial wires supported by two insulators terminating a supporting cross wire. By fanning the wires, a reduction in vertical dimensions is attained, and control of impedance and pattern may be had by suitable orientation of the antenna on the aircraft. It will be noted that the height of the antenna is only approximately 16 per cent of the wavelength at the resonant frequency.

A typical fan installation is shown in Figs. 66A and 66B. Wire and insulators are standard Air Corps stock items which greatly simplify both installation and maintenance problems. The antenna is supported between the fuselage and vertical stabilizer, and in this particular application the antenna is inverted to improve the downward pattern.

Fig. 67 indicates ground and flight measurements of the antenna shown in the photograph. It is rather interesting to note the effect of the presence of the ground on the impedance characteristics which result in a uniform shift of frequency. Because of this correlation between ground and flight data, it was possible to make most of the initial adjustments of the antenna on the ground and only final checks were necessary in flight.

Fig. 68 indicates the impedance of the 3-wire fan antenna shown in Fig. 67. The initial curve, shown by the dotted lines, results in 10 per cent bandwidth. By addition of matching section the bandwidth is expanded to 32 per cent. Offhand, this does not seem to be much of an improvement over the results obtained from the two-

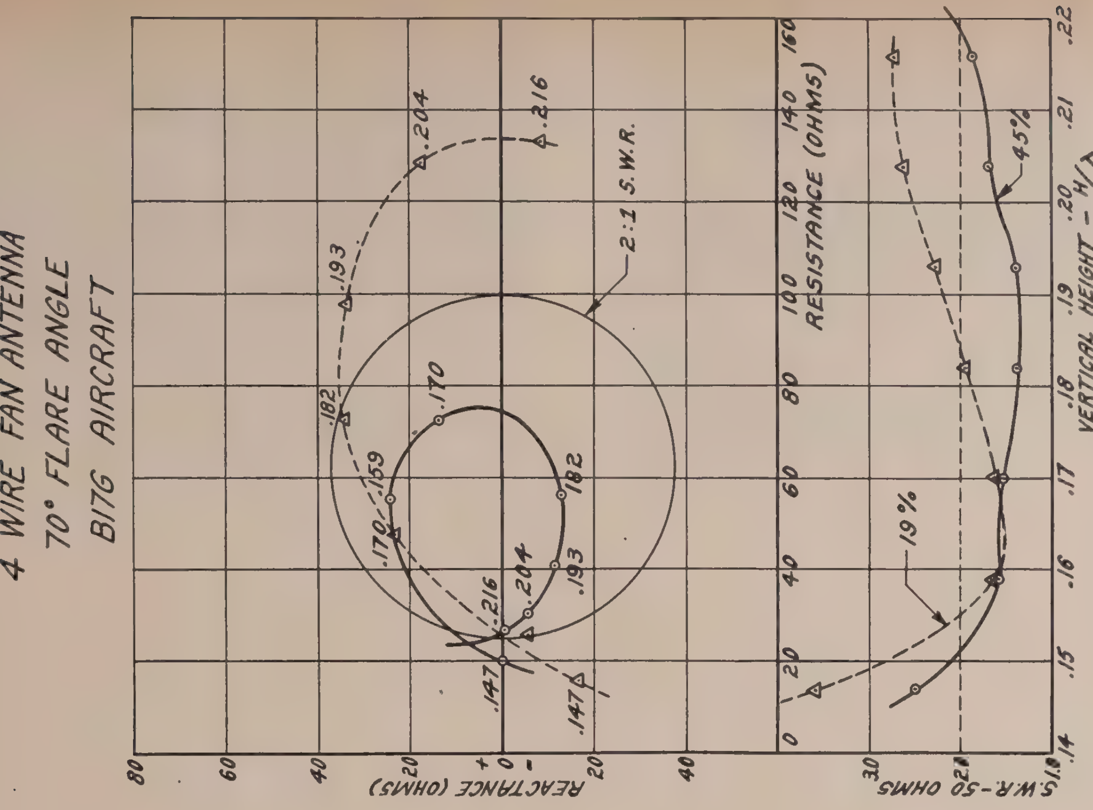


Fig. 69—Matched impedance of four-wire fan antenna.

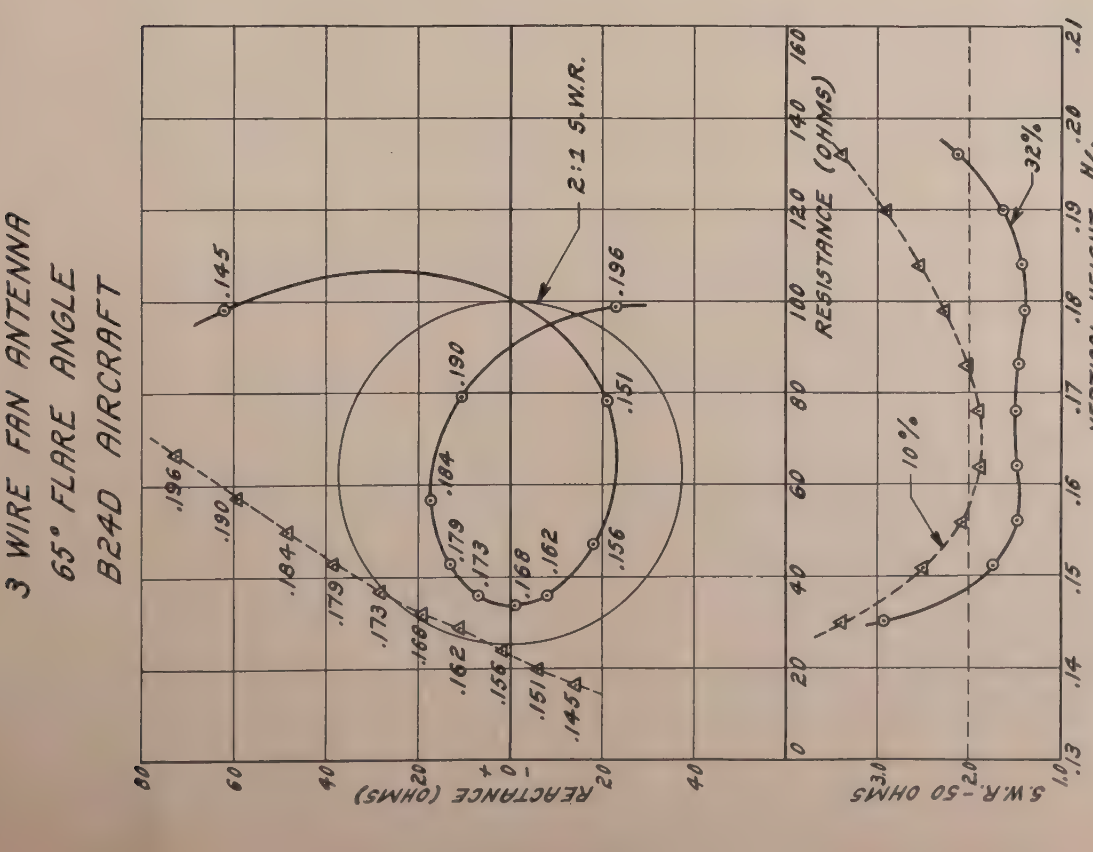


Fig. 68—Matched impedance of three-wire fan antenna.

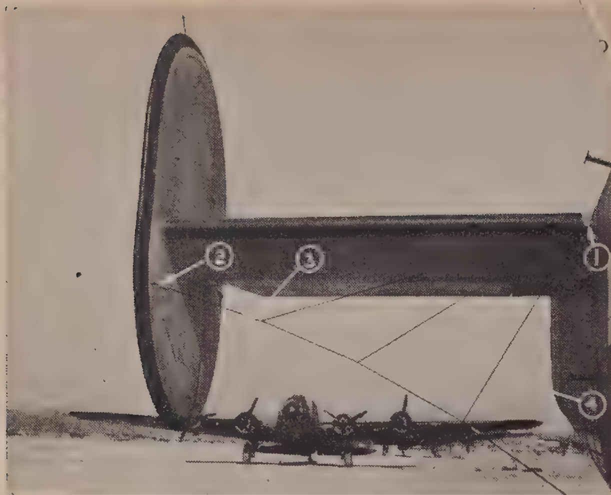


Fig. 66A—Installation of three-wire fan antenna. (1) insulator IN-84 lead-in, (2) spring tension unit, (3) insulator IN-88, and (4) wire W-106-A.

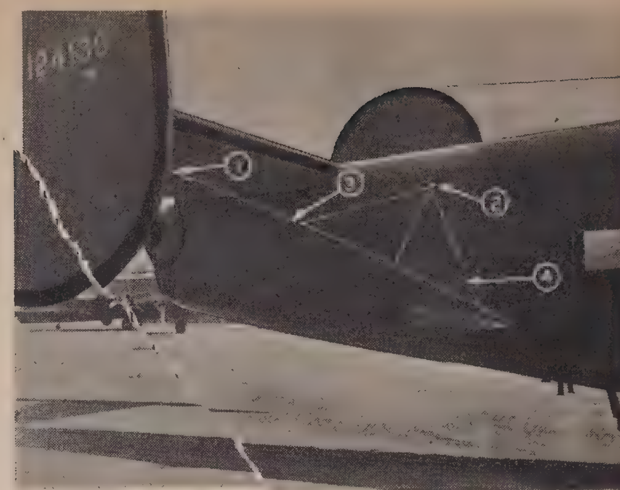


Fig. 66B—Another installation of three-wire fan antenna. (1) spring tension unit, (2) insulator IN-84 lead-in, (3) insulator IN-88, and (4) wire W-106-A.

wire V antenna, in which a 28 per cent band was realized. However, upon inspection of the standing-wave-ratio curve it is apparent that a much more favorable over-all standing-wave ratio is obtained in the case of the fan, and a 40 per cent bandwidth could have been easily realized if comparable standing-wave ratio standards were used. In this case a two-element matching network is used, a series capacitor to position the impedance curve with respect to the 2:1 standing-wave-ratio circle, and a parallel stub to effect a tie for optimum bandwidth.

Fig. 69 shows the antenna impedance of a 4-wire fan on a B-17G aircraft. A subtantial bandwidth is obtained in expanding the basic band of 19 per cent to 45 per cent by use of matching techniques. The matching network used consists of three elements, a series capacitor, parallel stub, and series quarter-wave line. In this particular example, the location of the antenna materially improved the antenna impedance over that normally expected from flat ground-plane measurements. The shape of the fuselage and other aircraft structures influences the impedance to a considerable extent, and very careful consideration has to be given to the selection of a suitable mounting location, both in respect to pattern as well as impedance. In most instances of multiwire antennas, any great improvement over flat ground-plane characteristics is usually the exception rather than the rule. In this case, a bandwidth of more than 50 per cent could have been realized by extending the ends of the band at the expense of the center without exceeding a 2:1 standing-wave ratio over the band.

IV. Conclusions

It should be realized that the types of antenna systems discussed are not universally used on aircraft, especially where very great bandwidths are concerned. This development merely represents a special problem which required a workable solution, easily adapted to existing aircraft. At relatively low frequencies, it was shown that matching techniques play a very conspicuous part in improving the impedance characteristics of the antenna, permitting a considerable simplification in the fundamental antenna structure. If no attempt were made to compensate for the frequency variation of impedance by means of an auxiliary matching network, and if only the basic antenna were relied upon for acceptable impedance characteristics, a much larger and more cumbersome antenna structure would result, which would be unacceptable for use on modern aircraft.

The same general techniques of measurement, matching, and antenna design are not necessarily limited in frequency range or to aircraft applications, and are quite applicable in other ranges and applications not specifically discussed. The analysis and methods presented are relatively simple and straightforward, and may be of considerable use in solving problems involving many types of broad-band antenna systems.

Acknowledgment

The authors wish to make grateful acknowledgment of the assistance of the members of the Antenna Branch of Special Projects Laboratory in the preparation of this paper. In particular, they wish to acknowledge the contribution of Mr. Ming S. Wong to the early development of the coiled-line impedance-measuring technique.

To Colonel G. L. Haller and members of the administrative staff of the Special Projects Laboratory, and to Colonel W. G. Eaton of Aircraft Radio Laboratories, acknowledgment is made for much encouragement and assistance in bringing this work to publication.

Cathode-Coupled Wide-Band Amplifiers*

G. C. SZIKLAI†, SENIOR MEMBER, I.R.E., AND A. C. SCHROEDER†, ASSOCIATE, I.R.E.

Summary—A general analysis indicates that, in wide-band amplifiers, stable operation is possible with triodes in circuits using the cathode as a signal terminal. The amplification, however, is approximately equal only to the square root of that available with grounded-cathode amplifier, and therefore twice as many tube units are required to obtain the same amplification. In certain applications, however, the utility of such circuits outweighs the loss of gain.

A simple radio-frequency amplifier was designed for television receivers, using a cathode-input circuit. By combining a cathode-output and a cathode-input stage using one single twin-triode tube, a circuit was devised which compares favorably with pentode stages with respect to gain, stability, and economy, while it has far superior noise characteristics. The new circuit, called the "cathode-coupled twin-triode" amplifier, provides greater flexibility than conventional amplifier circuits, and can be used for radio-frequency, intermediate-frequency, video, converter, or detector services. Since the same tube type can also be used for synchronizing and deflection circuits, the number of tube types can be materially reduced, and greater standardization with further economical advantages may be obtained. An interesting application of the new circuit is a novel bidirectional amplifier.

I. Introduction

For approximately two decades, screen-grid tubes were used almost exclusively for amplification of high-frequency signals. The screen grid acting as a shield reduced the effect of the output circuit on the signal circuit, and provided a high-impedance output. When, with the advent of the video art, in the case of extremely wide-band amplifiers, the external circuits had lower impedances, the advantage of the high plate impedance became less significant. In the particular case of the cathode-output (cathode-follower) circuit, for instance, multigrid tubes were used as triodes purely for the reason that they had higher transconductance than the commercially available triodes.

As the operating frequencies of radio communication increased, the transit-time effect became more and more significant. In order to reduce the effect, the spacing of the tube electrodes was reduced, and it became increasingly difficult to align several grids in extremely close proximity. Thus, in lieu of the screen grid, the grid was used as a shield between the input and output, and in certain cases the cathode-input (grounded-grid or inverted) amplifiers provided superior results in performance and economy. As engineering knowledge about noise sources expanded, the multigrid tubes were avoided in stages where the signal was small.

It is the purpose of this report to give a comparative analysis of vacuum-tube circuits using multigrid and triode tubes in wide-band circuits. In the case of the triodes, circuits using the cathode as a signal electrode are emphasized, and a new cathode-coupled circuit is introduced. This circuit surpasses the advantages of pentode circuits with respect to economy and stability, and possibly permits a broader tube-standardization program.

II. Definitions

As it appeared above, the nomenclature applied to the various amplifier circuits is not too well standardized. As compared with the conventional amplifier, in which the cathode is substantially grounded with respect to high-frequency current, two other configurations are possible when the cathode is not grounded. In the first, the cathode serves as output terminal, and is called the cathode follower, or grounded-plate amplifier. The second uses the cathode as the input terminal, and is called the inverted, or grounded-grid amplifier. In the present paper we propose to regard the cathode as the reference point, since it is the primary electrode of a vacuum tube (the source of electrons), and we shall use the terms of grounded-cathode (Fig. 1), cathode-output (Fig. 2), and cathode-input circuits (Fig. 3). For the circuit shown in Fig. 4, we adapted the term of "cathode-coupled twin-triode" stage. All circuits in which the cathode is not at ground, but serves as an input or output terminal, will be designated as cathode-coupled circuits against the conventional grounded-cathode amplifier.

III. Wide-Band Grounded-Cathode Amplifiers

The basic circuit, and its equivalent network, are shown in Fig. 1. This familiar circuit is designed such that, at frequencies of $f_0 \pm \Delta f/2$, the amplification is 0.707 times that of the amplification at f_0, where f_0 is the resonant frequency and Δf is the bandwidth. If this stage is preceded by a similar stage, the amplification is then $A_{gc}=g_m/(\Delta\omega\sqrt{C_1C_0})$ (see Appendix I (7)) where g_m is the transconductance, $\Delta\omega=2\pi\Delta f$, C_1 is the input, and C_0 is the output capacitance. The grid-to-plate capacitance and other sources of feedback are assumed to be negligible. Since the last assumption is generally untrue, in order to reduce the grid-to-plate capacitance a screen is placed between the grid and the plate.[1] In this and the following equations, the value of $\Delta\omega=2\pi\Delta f$ may be taken around any center frequency, and, accordingly, they are equally valid for video, intermediate-frequency, or radio-frequency amplifiers (see Appendix II). The formula given above is for a simple tuned circuit, as shown in Fig. 1. With a coupling circuit of more complex nature, greater gains may be obtained, as was shown by Wheeler.[2] For purposes of simple comparison, only the simple coupling circuit is considered here, but

* Decimal classification: R363.1. Original manuscript received by the Institute April 3, 1945; revised manuscript received, June 7, 1945.

† Radio Corporation of America, RCA Laboratories, Princeton, N. J.

[1] W. Shottky, United States Patent No. 1,537,708.

[2] H. A. Wheeler, "Wide-band amplifiers for television," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 27, pp. 429–438; July, 1939.

the same factors of improvement apply in all the cases when more complex coupling circuits are used.

IV. Wide-Band Cathode-Output Amplifiers

The basic circuit and its equivalent network are shown in Fig. 2. This circuit is shown in a form to work into a high-impedance circuit, such as the input of another similar stage. A circuit of this type was proposed in 1925 in order to reduce feedback in radio-frequency amplifiers.[3] A more important application of this circuit became popular in recent years when it was applied to output loads of low impedance, such as transmission lines.[4] This latter type of operation of this circuit has been frequently analyzed in the literature.[5,6] It was shown that the input capacitance of the stage is reduced by a factor of (1−amplification from grid to cathode) providing greater permissible impedance for the previous circuit. In general, the circuit behaves as if the tube had an amplification factor and plate resistance divided by $(\mu+1)$. For our particular case the amplification is $A_{co}=\sqrt{g_m/(\Delta\omega C_1)}$ (see Appendix I (16)). This is (provided the stage is preceded by a similar stage) the square root of the amplification obtainable from a pentode with the same g_m and capacitances, thus indicating that two cathode-output stages in cascade are required to provide gain in the same order as that of one pentode stage.

V. Wide-Band Cathode-Input Amplifiers

The basic circuit and the equivalent network are shown in Fig. 3. In this circuit, the input and output circuits are shielded by the grid. This method of shielding, although disclosed[7] as early as 1927, became popular only during the last few years.[8–10]. If the stage operates from a source of matching impedance, as is the case when the source is predominantly resistive, the amplification is $A_{ci}=(1/2)\sqrt{\mu/[\Delta\omega C_0 r_s(\Delta\omega C_0 r_p-1)]}$ (see Appendix I (23)). It may be observed again that the amplification is less than the square root of the amplification of the grounded-cathode triode amplifier, thus requiring twice as many stages for the same over-all gain. When the signal sources is predominantly reactive, the expression changes to $A_{ci}=\sqrt{g_m/(\Delta\omega C_0)}$ (see Appendix I (26)).

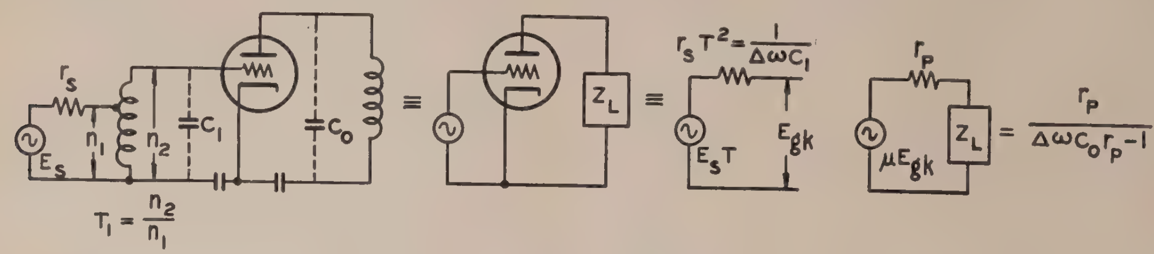


Fig. 1—Grounded-cathode amplifier circuit and equivalent network.

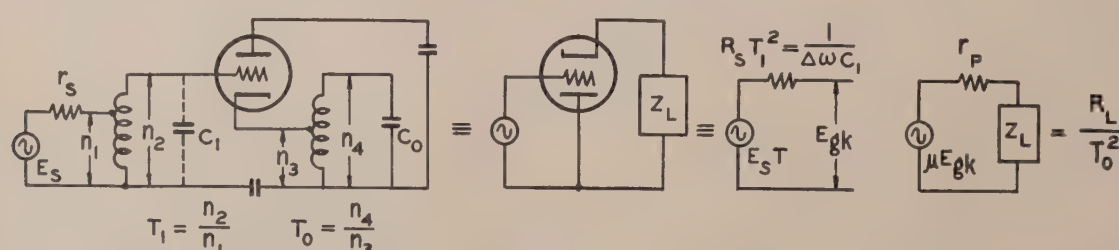


Fig. 2—Cathode-output amplifier and equivalent network.

While this amplifier has lower gain than the grounded-cathode amplifier, it finds its greatest utility as a radio-frequency stage between the antenna and the converter stage because of the fact that it is stable without the need of a screen grid or neutralization. This type of amplifier generates considerably lower noise currents than a pentode would in the same service. It provides great improvement, for instance, in receiving television signals. Since the impedance appearing across the tube input for high g_m is low, $Z_1=[r_p+(1/\Delta\omega C_0)]/(1+\mu)$ the tuned circuit provides an adequately flat response over the whole television band, and therefore no tuning means is required for the antenna circuit for a six-channel receiver.

The circuit diagram of a simple cathode-input radio-frequency amplifier to be used with television receivers is shown in Fig. 5. Fig. 6 shows such an amplifier mounted in an RCA TRK-120 television receiver. Fig. 7

[3] A. Winther, United States Patent No. 1,700,393.

[4] A. D. Blumlein, United States Patent No. 2,178,985.

[5] A. Preisman, "Some notes on video amplifier design," *RCA Rev.*, vol. 2, pp. 430–432; April, 1938.

[6] A. A. Barco, "An iconoscope preamplifier," *RCA Rev.*, vol. 4, pp. 102–107; July, 1939.

[7] E. F. Alexanderson, United States Patent No. 1,896,534.

[8] C. E. Strong, "The inverted amplifier," *Electronics*, vol. 13, pp. 14–56; July, 1940.

[9] M. Dishal, "Theoretical gain and signal-to-noise ratio of the grounded-grid amplifier at ultra-high frequencies," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 32, pp. 276–284; May, 1944.

[10] M. C. Jones, "Grounded-grid radio-frequency voltage amplifiers," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 32, pp. 423–429; July, 1944.

shows the inside of the auxiliary chassis. This amplifier affords an additional amplification of 2 to 4, and a significant improvement of the signal-to-noise ratio. The heterodyne oscillator signal is substantially reduced in the antenna, thereby reducing radio-frequency interference between two receivers. Several of these simple amplifiers were made and attached to receivers in the Princeton area (approximately 45 miles from New York and Philadelphia), and considerable improvements were obtained in every case.

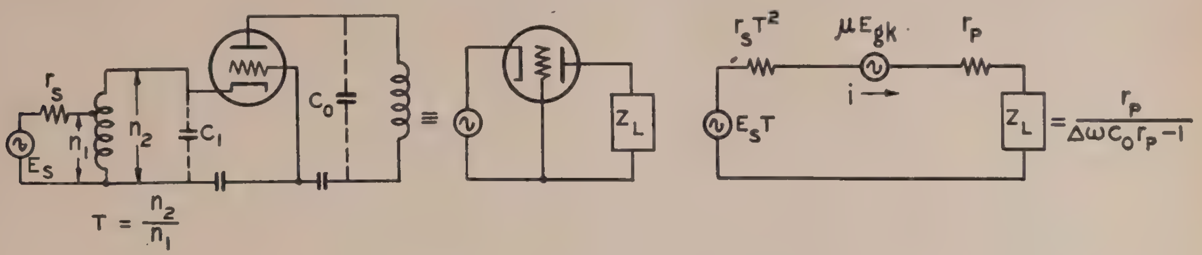


Fig. 3—Cathode-input amplifier and equivalent network.

Since the antenna circuit feeding into the cathode is untuned, some thought has been given to the question of cross modulation in the cathode-input radio-frequency amplifier due to two strong carrier signals. Cross modulation is a function of the strength of the signals and the degree of curvature of the tube characteristic. In this amplifier, the magnitude of signal voltages appearing between grid and cathode is less than those in the antenna, since a 1:1 transformer is used for coupling, and the circuit is highly degenerative. These voltages are less than those appearing at the grid of a converter tube in television sets using a step-up transformer for coupling the antenna to the grid. The amplifier characteristics of a cathode-input amplifier are less curved because of the high degeneration of the cathode circuit. One is therefore led to the preliminary conclusion that cross modulation is less serious in the cathode-input amplifier than in the converter even though the grid of the latter is tuned. The tuned circuit in the converter is too broad to give sufficient adjacent-channel rejection.

In some cases the input loading is far in excess of that required to obtain the desired bandwidth. In such cases a compromise between the grounded-cathode and cathode-input amplifier may be obtained by moving the ground from the grid toward the cathode on the secondary of the input transformer, shown in Fig. 8. The limiting factor in this case will be found in the stability since the grid is a less effective shield, but with proper tapping of the coil, stable operation may be obtained. The circuit will behave as if the amplification factor of the tube were increased by the transformer ratio of the cathode part of the coil to the total secondary.

These circuits are particularly suitable for antennaplex systems as a consequence of the inherently good noise and wide-band characteristics.

VI. Wide-Band Cathode-Coupled Amplifiers

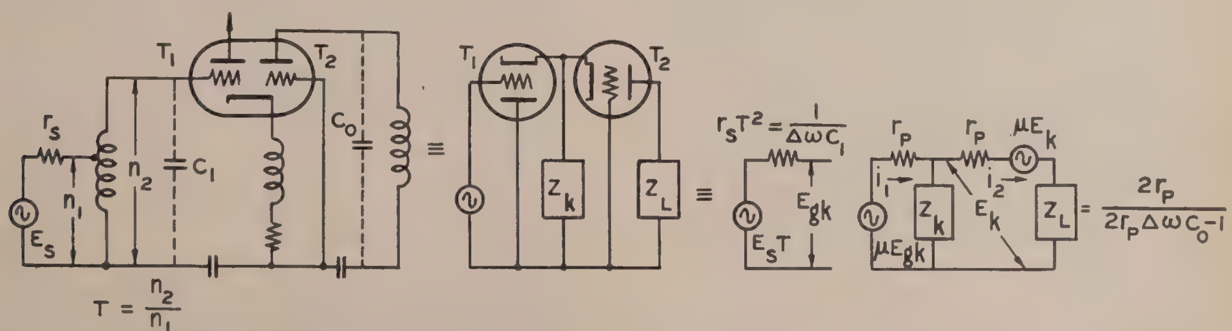


Fig. 4—Cathode-coupled twin amplifier and equivalent network.

As has been shown, the cathode-output circuit provides a comparatively high input-impedance circuit, with the additional advantage that this impedance is not changed materially by external potentials, such as grid bias, plate voltage, etc. It has been proposed to use such a stage in conjunction with a grounded-cathode amplifier,[11] but such a circuit, besides requiring the same number of circuit elements as two stages, uses a pentode tube as the grounded-cathode amplifier. In some cases this dual stage does not provide adequate stability, and also does not provide better noise

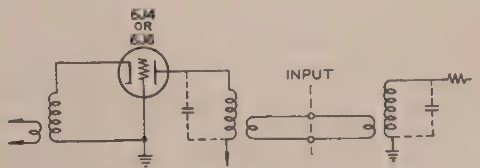


Fig. 5—Television radio-frequency amplifier circuit.

[11] P. Selgin, "The cathode driver as an R-F coupling stage," *Radio*, vol. 28, pp. 26–28; March, 1944.

characteristic than a pentode. By connecting a cathode-output and cathode-input stage together, as shown in Fig. 4, we obtain a high-gain wide-band amplifier stage.

The amplification of a wide-band amplifier of this type is $A_{CCTT} = g_m/(2\Delta\omega\sqrt{C_1 C_0})$ (see Appendix I (41)) which is favorably comparable to the gain obtained for grounded-cathode amplifiers, particularly since the input capacitance (C_1) is reduced by a factor of $1-(1+2\Delta\omega C_0 r_p)/(4\Delta\omega C_0 r_p)$ (see Appendix I (46)).

The circuit is economical since a coil and a resistor (the coil preferably wound on the resistor) are the only coupling elements required between the two tube units. The resistor and by-pass capacitor customarily required in a screen supply are eliminated. Since the plate currents in the two triode units swing in opposite directions, subsequent similar stages have little influence on each other, due to varying load on the plate supply. By

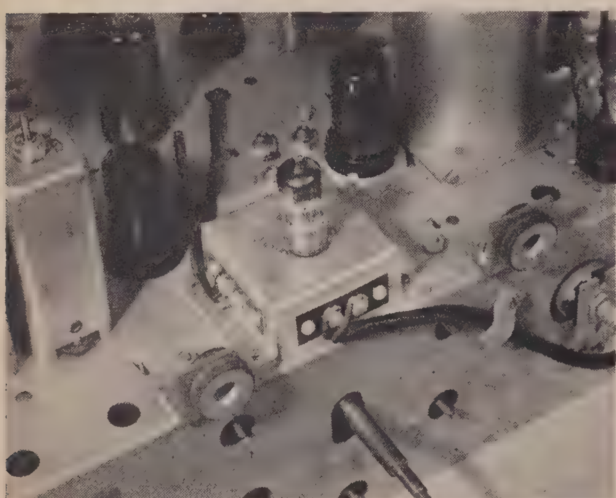


Fig. 6—Radio-frequency amplifier on RCA television-receiver chassis.

examining the circuit we may notice that the input and output signals are of the same polarity. Hence, when a cathode-coupled amplifier is used for video amplification, no attention need be given to the number of stages in order to obtain the proper polarity.

TABLE I
COMPARATIVE WIDE-BAND AMPLIFIER DATA

Tube Types		Circuit	Bandwidth 4 megacycles				Equivalent Root-Mean-Square Grid Noise μV	List Price $
No.	Base		G_m μV	C_{gk} $\mu\mu f$	C_0 $\mu\mu f$	Amplification		
6AC7	Octal	Grounded-Cathode	9000	11.0	5.0	14.2	6.8	1.75
6AB7	Octal	Grounded-Cathode	5000	8.0	5.0	8.8	12.6	1.15
6AG5	Miniature	Grounded-Cathode	5000	6.5	1.8	17.6	10.4	2.15
6J6	Miniature	Cathode-Coupled	5300	2.2	1.6	10.4	7.5	1.85

A twin-triode tube with a common cathode may be manufactured more economically than a pentode of the same transconductance. While this point may be debatable at present, it can be shown that receivers could be designed in which twin triodes were used in nearly all stages, and by reducing the tube types, the cost of the preferred-type tube could be reduced still further. Fig. 9 is a block diagram of a 16-tube television receiver in which 12 tubes are of the twin-triode type.

Table I shows the amplification obtainable from conventional high g_m pentodes in grounded-cathode circuits and from twin triodes in coupled-cathode wide-band amplifier circuits. To allow for the capacitances of tube sockets, wiring, etc., 2 micromicrofarads was added to the tube capacitances of each terminal, given in the tube handbook, for miniature tubes. Similarly, for octal metal tubes, 5 micromicrofarads was added. The bandwidth was assumed to be 4 megacycles, and the gain formulas given above were used. The input capacitance of the coupled stages was corrected for degeneration.

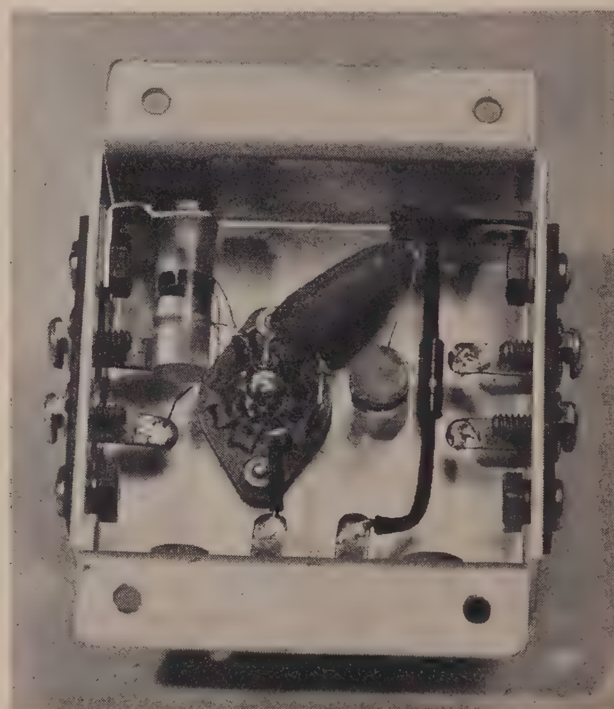


Fig. 7—Internal view of radio-frequency amplifier.

The tube-cost figures were also taken from the RCA Tube Handbook.

VII. Special Cathode-Coupled Stages

On examination of Fig. 4, we may observe that the two grounded electrodes correspond to the input and output electrodes in the reverse direction. By injecting a signal of different frequency through a resonant circuit that appears substantially as a short circuit for the signal applied in the original direction to the grid of the second tube T_2, and taking it off the plate of the first tube T_1 in the same manner, we obtain a bidirectional amplifier as shown in Fig. 10.

The terminals of the two signals are completely independent, and the capacitance of each will determine the

bandwidth and gain of its own signals. An amplifier of this type may be useful for bidirectional relay stations, reflex circuits, etc. Approximate calculations and experimental results indicate that with simple resonant circuits the two signals must be approximately twice their bandwidths apart. With a smaller frequency separation, the electrodes, which are supposed to be

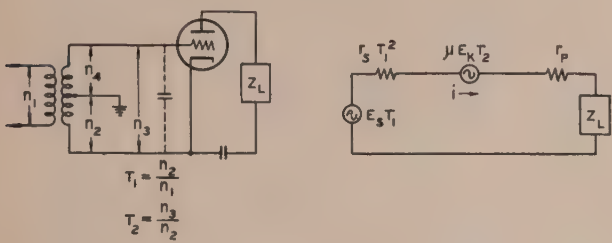


Fig. 8—Tapped cathode-input amplifier and equivalent network.

grounded, do not provide constant potentials, and, due to the regeneration, both pass bands are reduced. Further work on more complex circuits may permit the choice of closer signal frequencies.

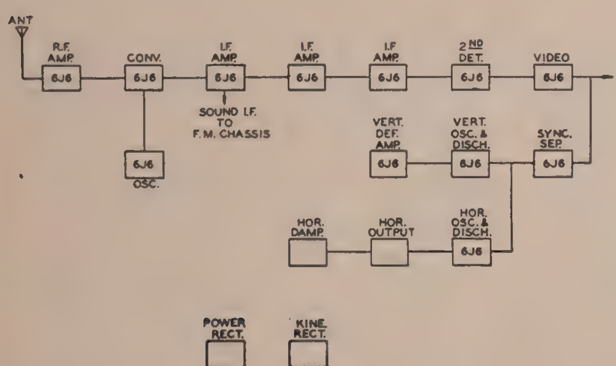


Fig. 9—Block diagram of television receiver using 6J6 tubes.

The experimental chassis containing a bidirectional cathode-coupled stage is shown in Fig. 11. The signals

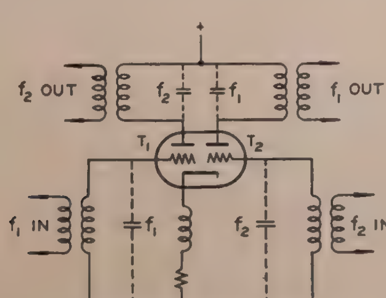


Fig. 10—Bidirectional-amplifier circuit.

applied were the frequency bands 8.5 to 13 megacycles and 24 to 28.5 megacycles. A gain of approximately 12 was obtained in both directions with a 6J6 tube. Fig. 12 shows a simple intermediate-frequency transformer construction for the frequency band 8.5 to 13 megacycles with a 6J6 tube. The advantage of the bidirectional amplifier could be summed up by claiming a total amplification equal to the square of that of the unidirectional stage, or by claiming twice the bandwidth with the same gain.

The cathode-coupled stage can be used also as a frequency converter as shown in Fig. 13. The grid of T_2 is substantially grounded for all frequencies except for

Fig. 11—Experimental bidirectional-amplifier stage.

the frequency of the tank circuit of the local oscillator. The local oscillator varies the transconductance of the tube, and therefore provides an intermediate-frequency output across the tuned circuit connected to the plate. The second tube T_2 acts as a cathode-output stage for the oscillator signal, and attenuates it by 6 decibels toward the antenna since it works into an impedance like its own. The first tube T_1 further attenuates this signal by providing a divider through its grid-cathode capacitance and the input impedance.

A simple cathode-coupled two-terminal oscillator circuit[12] is shown in Fig. 14. This is merely the twin-

[12] M. G. Crosby, United States Patent No. 2,269,417.

triode cathode-coupled amplifier described above, in which the output plate is coupled back to the input grid through some coupling impedance. The grid of the cathode-input section T_2 is normally returned to ground. However, by properly biasing this grid, it is possible to obtain a frequency variation in excess of plus or minus 75 kilocycles about a mean frequency of 50 megacycles with a 6J6 tube, with a bias variation of plus or minus one volt. In a television or frequency-modulation receiver this feature can be used to good advantage to provide vernier tuning or automatic frequency control without adding a reactance tube. In a frequency-modulation transmitter it may be possible to use this property to obtain direct frequency modulation of the oscillator.

Fig. 12—Miniature intermediate-frequency transformer and tube.

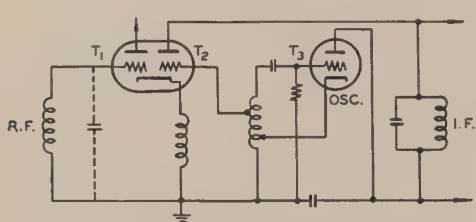


Fig. 13—Cathode-coupled frequency converter.

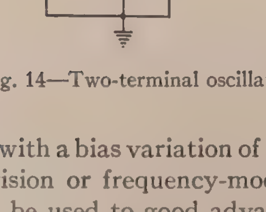


Fig. 14—Two-terminal oscillator.

Further applications of the cathode-coupled stage may include lock-in oscillators, reactance tubes, self-oscillating converters, etc. The economy and the standardization possibilities of the circuit may well suit it for a large number of different applications.

Appendix I

Derivation of Gain Formulas for Wide-Band Amplifiers

The grounded-cathode amplifier, with its equivalent network, is shown in Fig. 1. If we desire to maintain an amplification at a frequency $f=[\omega_0 \pm 1/(2\Delta\omega)]/2\pi$ that is approximately equal to 71 per cent of the amplification at resonance (see Appendix II)

$$r_s T^2 = 1/(\Delta\omega C_1) \tag{1}$$

provided we have unity coupling in our transformer. C_1 includes the capacitance in the primary divided by the square of the transformation ratio. The source resistance r_s may be a loading resistor, the surge impedance of a transmission line, the radiation resistance of an antenna, etc. The voltage applied to the grid is according to Thevenin's theorem

$$E_{gk} = E_s T. \tag{2}$$

The output of the tube is

$$E_o = E_{gk}[(\mu Z_L)/(r_p + Z_L)] \tag{3}$$

but since Z_L is determined by an external loading resistance which is in shunt with the plate resistance r_p according to the relation

$$(r_p Z_L)/(r_p + Z_L) = 1/(\Delta\omega C_o) \tag{4}$$

or

$$Z_L = r_p/(\Delta\omega C_o r_p - 1) \tag{5}$$

if (1) and (5) are substituted into (3), and both sides are divided by E_s, the amplification A is

$$A_{gc} = E_o/E_s = [1/(\sqrt{\Delta\omega C_1 r_s})][1/(\Delta\omega C_o r_p)]. \tag{6}$$

If the stage under consideration is preceded by a similar stage, we may set r_s equal to $1/(\Delta\omega C_o)$, in which case we obtain an over-all response of 0.5 at $f_o \pm (\Delta f/2)$, and by replacing μ/r_p by g_m, (6) will take the convenient form of

$$A_{gc} = g_m/(\Delta\omega\sqrt{C_1 C_o}) \tag{7}$$

a formula equally useful for tiodes or pentodes if feedback can be neglected.

The equivalent noise resistance of the grounded-cathode amplifier is given by

$$R_{n\,\mathrm{equ}} = 2.2/g_m \tag{8}$$

while for the pentodes

$$R_{n\,\mathrm{equ}} = [2.2/(g_m(1+\alpha))][1 + q\alpha(I_b/g_m)]. \tag{9}$$
$$\alpha = I_{c2}/I_b$$

I_b is the plate current, and I_{c2} is the screen current. The root-mean-square grid-noise input may be calculated then with the aid of the equation

$$\sqrt{e_{gn}^2} = 1.3 \times 10^{-10}\sqrt{R_{n\,\mathrm{equ}}\Delta f}. \tag{10}$$

The cathode-input amplifier, with its equivalent network, is shown in Fig. 2. Again for bandwidth considerations we make the assumption that $R_sT_1^2=1/(\Delta\omega C_1)$ (see (1)) and

$$[(r_pT_o^2)/(\mu+1)+R_L]/[(r_pT_o^2)/(\mu+1)R_L]=\Delta\omega C_o \quad (11)$$

where the input capacitance C_1 is equal to the sum of the reduced grid-cathode capacitance due to degeneration[5] and the incidental capacitance to ground, while R_L is the equivalent parallel resistance of the losses in the output circuit. By rearranging (11),

$$R_L(\mu+1)/T_o^2=r_p(R_L\Delta\omega C_o-1). \quad (12)$$

The amplification is

$$A_{co}=T_o\left(\frac{\mu}{\mu+1}\right)\left[\frac{R_L/T_o^2}{\dfrac{r_p}{\mu+1}+\dfrac{R_L}{T_o^2}}\right]$$

$$=T_o\left(\frac{\mu}{\mu+1}\right)\left[\frac{\dfrac{R_L(\mu+1)}{T_o^2}}{r_p+\dfrac{R_L(\mu+1)}{T_o^2}}\right]. \quad (13)$$

If we substitute from (12)

$$A_{co}=T_o\left(\frac{\mu}{\mu+1}\right)\left(\frac{R_L\Delta\omega C_o-1}{R_L\Delta\omega C_o}\right). \quad (14)$$

If $\mu\gg1$ and we substitute for T_o from (12)

$$A_{co}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu R_L}{(R_L\Delta\omega C_o-1)r_p}}\left(\frac{R_L\Delta\omega C_o-1}{R_L\Delta\omega C_o}\right)$$

$$=\sqrt{\frac{\mu}{r_p}}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{\Delta\omega C_o}}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{R_L}\,\Delta\omega C_o}\right) \quad (15)$$

if $\sqrt{R_L}$ is high we may replace μ/r_p by g_m, (15) will take the form

$$A_{co}=\sqrt{g_m/(\Delta\omega C_i)}. \quad (16)$$

Comparing (7) and (16), we may notice that the latter is in the order of the square root of the former, thus two cascade stages are required for amplification of the same order of magnitude. The equivalent noise resistance in this case is equal to that of the grounded-cathode amplifier.

The cathode-input amplifier, with its equivalent network, is shown in Fig. 3. This circuit may be analyzed in two ways. In one instance, the input impedance of the tube, which is usually very low, is matched to a predominantly resistive input, such as an antenna, a transmission line, etc. In the second case, the transformation ratio is reversed and the input impedance loads a tuned circuit to provide the required bandwidth.

In the first case, for optimum power transfer

$$r_sT^2=(r_p+Z_L)/(\mu+1)\approx(r_p+Z_L)/\mu. \quad (17)$$

From the equivalent network, it may be seen that

$$E_k\mu+E_sT=I(r_sT^2+r_p+Z_L) \quad (18)$$

and

$$E_k=E_sT-Ir_sT^2 \quad (19)$$

then

$$I=[(\mu+1)E_sT]/[(\mu+1)r_sT^2+r_p+Z_L]. \quad (20)$$

If we multiply (20) with the plate load Z_L and divide through with E_s, we obtain

$$A_{ci}=E_o/E_s=[(\mu+1)TZ_L]/[(\mu+1)r_sT^2+r_p+Z_L]. \quad (21)$$

If we substitute from (17) for T, we obtain

$$A_{ci}=[(\mu+1)Z_L]\Big/\left[\left(\frac{\mu+1}{\mu}+1\right)\left(\sqrt{\mu r_s(r_p+Z_L)}\right)\right]. \quad (22)$$

If $\mu\gg1$, equation (22), after substitution for Z_L from (5), takes the form

$$A_{ci}=(1/2)\sqrt{\mu/[\Delta\omega C_or_s(\Delta\omega C_or_p-1)]}. \quad (23)$$

For the second case, when the cathode-input amplifier operates from a tap on a tuned circuit fed by a comparatively high impedance, such as another stage of amplifier,

$$T^2=(\mu+1)/(r_p\Delta\omega C_0)\approx\mu/(r_p\Delta\omega C_0). \quad (24)$$

If this value is substituted in the gain equation

$$A_{fi}=[(\mu+1)Z_L]/[(r_p+Z_L)T] \quad (25)$$

if $\mu\gg1$ yields the equation after substitution for Z_L from (5)

$$A_{ci}=\sqrt{g_m/(\Delta\omega C_0)}. \quad (26)$$

The equivalent noise input may be calculated from (8) with the aid of the equation

$$\sqrt{e_{kN}^2}=\left(\frac{1.3\times10^{-10}\sqrt{R_{n\,\mathrm{equ}}\Delta f}}{Z_L+r_p+R_1(\mu+1)}\right)\mu R_1. \quad (27)$$

A compromise between the grounded-cathode and cathode-input amplifier may be obtained by connecting the ground to a tap on the input transformer, as shown in Fig. 8. From the equivalent network we may see that

$$E_sT_1+\mu E_kT_2=I(r_sT_1^2+r_p+Z_L) \quad (28)$$

and

$$E_k=E_sT_1=Ir_sT_1^2. \quad (29)$$

If we solve for I, we obtain

$$I=[(\mu T_2+1)E_sT_1]/[(\mu T_2+1)r_sT_1^2+r_p+Z_L] \quad (30)$$

which is the same as (20) except that in place of μ we have μT_2, and, accordingly, we increased the amplification factor by T_2.

The cathode-coupled twin-triode amplifier is shown in Fig. 4, with its equivalent network. From the equivalent network we may observe that

$$i_1r_p+(i_1-i_2)Z_k=\mu E_{gk}=\mu(E_1-E_k)$$
$$=\mu E_1-(i_1-i_2)\mu Z_k \quad (31)$$

and

$$(i_2-i_1)Z_k+i_2(r_p+Z_L)=\mu E_k \quad (32)$$

from (31)

$$i_1[r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)]-i_2[Z_k(\mu+1)]=\mu E_1 \quad (33)$$

and from (32)

$$-i_1[Z_k(\mu+1)]+i_2[r_p+Z_L+Z_k(\mu+1)]=0. \quad (34)$$

If (33) is divided through with $r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)$, we have

$$i_1 - i_2[Z_k(\mu+1)]/[r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)] = (\mu E_1)/[r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)] \quad (35)$$

and if (34) is divided through with $r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)$, we have

$$-i_1 + i_2[r_p+Z_L+Z_k(\mu+1)]/[Z_k(\mu+1)] = 0. \quad (36)$$

If we add (35) and (36) we have

$$i_2\left[\frac{r_p+Z_L+Z_k(\mu+1)}{Z_k(\mu+1)} - \frac{Z_k(\mu+1)}{r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)}\right] = \frac{\mu E_1}{r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)}. \quad (37)$$

Thus the solution for the plate current of T_2 is

$$i_2 = \frac{\mu E_1 Z_k(\mu+1)}{r_p^2 + Z_L r_p + 2Z_k r_p(\mu+1) + Z_k Z_L(\mu+1)}. \quad (38)$$

If we multiply through with Z_L and divide with E_1, we obtain the amplification from grid number 1 to plate number 2

$$A_{CCTT} = \frac{\mu Z_L Z_k(\mu+1)}{r_p^2 + r_p Z_L + 2Z_k r_p(\mu+1) + Z_k Z_L(\mu+1)}. \quad (39)$$

If Z_k is much larger than $(r_p+Z_L)/(2(\mu+1))$, which is an easy condition to fulfill, (39) will take the form

$$A_{CCTT} = \mu Z_L/(2r_p+Z_L). \quad (40)$$

If we substitute $\Delta\omega C_0$ for $(2r_p+Z_L)/(2r_pZ_L)$ and multiply by the input-circuit transfer $\sqrt{C_o/C_i}$, where C_o is the output capacitance of the preceding stage factor (assumed to be equal to that of the stage under analysis) and C_i is the input capacitance corrected for degeneration, we have

$$A_{CCTT} = g_m/(2\Delta\omega\sqrt{C_iC_o}). \quad (41)$$

The grids of both tubes are at equal gain points with respect to their cathodes (in other words, the same gain is obtained from either grid to the output of the plate circuit, when the signal is applied between the grid and the cathode), and thus both tubes contribute equally to the total noise. The apparent noise generating resistances in either grid is equal to (8), and therefore the equivalent noise resistance between the input grid and cathode is

$$R_{n\,\mathrm{equ}} = 4.4/g_m \quad (42)$$

where g_m is the transconductance of one tube unit. The root-mean-square grid-noise equivalent may be determined with the aid of (10). The equivalent noise resistance of the cathode-coupled twin-triode amplifier is considerably better than that of a pentode amplifier, and therefore a great improvement can be obtained in the noise factor by using cathode-coupled amplifiers in the early stages of amplification. A particularly useful instance is when cathode-coupled intermediate-frequency amplifiers are used after low-gain frequency converters.

To evaluate C_i, we calculate from the equation

$$C_i = C_D + C_{gp} + C_{gk}(1-A_1) \quad (43)$$

where C_D is the incidental (socket, wiring, coil, etc.) capacitance, C_{gp} is the grid-to-plate capacitance, and C_{gk} is the cathode-grid capacitance. A_1 is the amplification of the first tube only.

$$A_1 = \mu Z_k/[r_p+Z_k(\mu+1)] = [\mu/(\mu+1)][(r_p+Z_p)/(2r_p+Z_p)]. \quad (44)$$

If $\mu \gg 1$ and we substitute

$$Z_p = 2r_p/(2r_p\Delta\omega C_0 - 1) \quad (45)$$

into (44) we have

$$A_1 = (2\Delta\omega C_0 r_p + 1)/(4\Delta\omega C_0 r_p). \quad (46)$$

Appendix II

The bandwidth in the present paper is considered as the frequency, or the separation between the frequencies, at which the amplification is reduced by a factor of $1/\sqrt{2}$ of the value at the frequency of maximum amplification. The gain is a direct function of the impedance of the output circuit; therefore we may examine the impedance, and particularly its absolute value, directly.

In the case of a simple resistance-capacitance circuit as shown in Fig. 15, the absolute value of the admittance at

$$|Y| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{R} = \left|\frac{1}{R} + j\omega_1 C\right|. \quad (47)$$

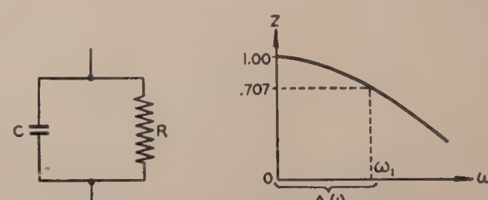


Fig. 15—Impedance characteristic of low-pass filter.

If we multiply by R and rationalize

$$\sqrt{2} = \sqrt{1+\omega_1^2C^2R^2} \quad (48)$$

since $\Delta\omega = \omega_1 - 0$,

$$\Delta\omega = 1/(RC). \quad (49)$$

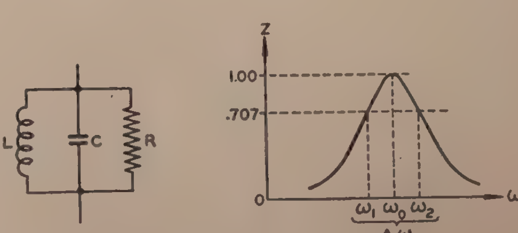


Fig. 16—Impedance characteristic of band-pass filter.

In the case of the band-pass analogy of this circuit, shown in Fig. 16, the admittance at the resonant frequency ω_0 is $1/R$, and at the frequencies ω_1 and ω_2 the absolute value of the admittance is

$$|Y| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{R} = \left|\frac{1}{R} + j\omega_c C - \frac{j}{\omega}\right|. \qquad (50)$$

If we multiply by R and rationalize, (50) becomes

$$\sqrt{2} = \sqrt{1 + \omega_c^2 C^2 R^2 [1 - (\omega_0^2/\omega_c^2)]^2} \qquad (51)$$

where $\omega_0^2 = 1/LC$ and $\omega_c = \omega_1$, or ω_2.

If (51) is squared, it yields

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &\omega_c RC[1 - (\omega_0^2/\omega_c^2)] = 1 \qquad \text{if} \quad \omega_c > \omega_0 \\ \text{or} \quad &\omega_c RC[1 - (\omega_0^2/\omega_c^2)] = -1 \qquad \text{if} \quad \omega_c < \omega_0 \end{aligned}\right\}. \qquad (52)$$

If we rearrange (52), and solve the quadratic

$$\omega_c^2 \pm [1/RC]\omega_c - \omega_0^2 = 0 \qquad (53)$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \omega_1 &= \frac{-[1/(RC)] \pm \sqrt{[1/(R^2C^2)] + 4\omega_0^2}}{2} \\ \omega_2 &= \frac{[1/(RC)] \pm \sqrt{[1/(R^2C^2)] + 4\omega_0^2}}{2} \end{aligned}\right\}. \qquad (54)$$

Since $\Delta\omega = \omega_2 - \omega_1$, $\Delta\omega = 1/RC$.

Band-Pass Bridged-T Network for Television Intermediate-Frequency Amplifiers*

G. C. SZIKLAI†, SENIOR MEMBER, I.R.E., AND A. C. SCHROEDER†, ASSOCIATE, I.R.E.

***Summary*—Bridged-T networks offer great economy in television intermediate-frequency amplifiers for sharp attenuation of the associated and adjacent sound channels.**

A simple design method was obtained by the use of the equivalent lattice. By the same method, general formulas were obtained for the phase, attenuation, and delay characteristics. Two designs are given to illustrate the convenience of the method.

I. Introduction

THE ADVANTAGES of bridged-T coupling networks for the attenuation of a narrow-frequency band have been pointed out frequently in the literature.[1–5] The advantages are simplicity of physical construction and economy. Television intermediate-frequency amplifiers with sharp attenuation requirements, close to the pass band, may employ band-pass bridged-T networks advantageously. A particular advantage is the ease of resistance cancellation for the sound intermediate-frequency signal elimination. While formulas for the components of ladder-type band-pass filters are readily available,[6,7] the components of a bridged-T network are usually determined from general network theory. This step is made in the present paper with the aid of the equivalent lattice network. The attenuation, phase, and delay characteristic equations are also derived by the same method.

* Decimal classification: R143. Original manuscript received by the Institute, April 3, 1945; revised manuscript received, June 7, 1945.

† Radio Corporation of America, RCA Laboratories, Princeton, N. J.

[1] A. C. Bartlett, "Extension of a property of artificial lines," *Phil. Mag.*, vol. 4, pp. 902–907; November, 1927.

[2] H. W. Bode, United States Patent No. 2,002,216, May, 1935.

[3] V. D. Landon, "M derived band-pass filters with resistance cancellation," *RCA Rev.*, vol. 1, pp. 93–101; October, 1936.

[4] W. N. Tuttle, "Bridged-T and parallel-T null circuits for measurements at radio frequencies," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 28, pp. 23–29; January, 1940.

[5] G. Builder, "Resistance balancing in wave filters," *A.W.A. Tech. Rev.*, vol. 3, pp. 83–100; 1938.

[6] T. E. Shea, "Transmission Networks and Wave Filters," D. Van Nostrand Company, New York, N. Y., 1929.

[7] J. E. Smith, "Simplified filter design," *RCA Press*.

II. The Lattice Equivalence

Considering the simple case of a symmetrical network, it is found to be equivalent to a lattice network with arms given by Bartlett's Theorem.[1] One pair of arms has a driving impedance equal to the terminal impedance of the network, with all arms short-circuited at the axis of symmetry, and the other arm is equal to the terminal impedance of either end with the network cut open at the axis of symmetry. The equivalence is illustrated in Fig. 1 for a bridged-T band-pass network,

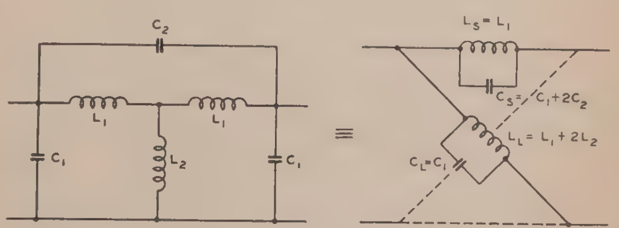


Fig. 1—Bridged-T band-pass filter and equivalent lattice network.

with the series arm of the lattice corresponding to the short-circuited midsection terminal impedance, and the lattice arm corresponding to the terminal impedance obtained by bisecting the network.

In any symmetrical lattice the attenuation[8] is

$$E_1/E_0 = [(1 + jRB_S)(1 + jRB_L)]/(jRB_L - jRB_S) \quad (1)$$

where R is the resistance which terminates both input and output of the lattice, B_S is the susceptance of the series arm, and B_L is the susceptance of the lattice arm.

In the present case

$$B_S = C_S\omega - 1/(L_S\omega) = (C_S L_S \omega^2 - 1)/(L_S\omega).$$

If we call $C_S L_S = 1/\omega_S^2$

$$B_S = [(\omega/\omega_S)^2 - 1]/[L_S\omega]. \qquad (2)$$

[8] W. Cauer, "New theory and design of wave filters," *Physics*, vol. 2, pp. 242–268; April, 1932.

Similarly,

$$B_L = [(\omega/\omega_L)^2 - 1]/[L_L\omega]. \tag{3}$$

From (1) it is obvious that the attenuation goes to infinity when $B_L = B_S$. If ω_∞ is 2π times the frequency at which the attenuation goes to infinity, then from (2) and (3)

$$[(\omega_\infty/\omega_S)^2 - 1]/[L_S\omega_\infty] = [(\omega_\infty/\omega_L)^2 - 1]/[L_L\omega_\infty]$$

or $\quad L_L/L_S = [(\omega_\infty/\omega_L)^2 - 1]/[(\omega_\infty/\omega_S)^2 - 1] = m^2 \quad (4)$

where m is a design factor.

From Fig. 1, $L_s = L_1$; $L_L = L_1 + 2L_2$; $C_S = C_1 + 2C_2$; $C_L = C_1$.

Therefore $\quad m^2 = L_L/L_S = (L_1 + 2L_2)/L_1 \quad (5)$

which says that m^2 must be greater than 1 in order for L_1 and L_2 to be physically realizable.

From (5),

$$L_2 = [L_1(m^2 - 1)]/2. \tag{6}$$

Also from (5), since

$$m^2L_1 = L_1 + 2L_2 = L_L = 1/(C_L\omega_L^2) = 1/(C_1\omega_L^2)$$
$$L_1 = 1/(m^2C_1\omega_L^2) \tag{7}$$

and since

$$C_S = 1/(L_S\omega_S^2) = 1/(L_1\omega_S^2) \text{ and } C_2 = (C_S - C_1)/2$$
$$C_2 = (1/2)[(1/(L_1\omega_S^2)) - C_1]. \tag{8}$$

From the fact that

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{Z_SZ_L}$$
$$= \sqrt{-(L_SL_L\omega^2)/\{[1 - (\omega/\omega_L)^2][1 - (\omega/\omega_S)^2]\}}$$
$$Z_0 = \sqrt{-[L_SL_L\omega^2\omega_L^2\omega_S^2]/[(\omega_L^2 - \omega^2)(\omega_S^2 - \omega^2)]} \tag{9}$$

which is real only if

$$\omega_L^2 > \omega^2 > \omega_S^2$$

or

$$\omega_L^2 < \omega^2 < \omega_S^2$$

we see that ω_L and ω_S are the cutoff frequencies.

If we call 2π times the midband frequency $\omega_m = \sqrt{\omega_L\omega_S}$, the midband image impedance from (9) is

$$Z_{0m} = \sqrt{-(L_SL_L\omega_m^2\omega_L^2\omega_S^2)/[(\omega_L^2 - \omega_m^2)(\omega_S^2 - \omega_m^2)]}$$
$$= \sqrt{-(L_SL_L\omega_L^3\omega_S^3)/\{[\omega_L^2 - (\omega_L\omega_S)][\omega_S^2 - (\omega_L\omega_S)]\}}$$
$$= \sqrt{+(L_SL_L\omega_L^2\omega_S^2)/(\omega_L - \omega_S)^2}$$
$$= [(\omega_L\omega_S)/(\omega_L - \omega_S)](\sqrt{L_SL_L})$$

From (4) $\quad L_L = m^2L_S$.

Therefore $\quad Z_{0m} = [(\omega_L\omega_S)/(\omega_L - \omega_S)](mL_S)$

and since $\quad L_S = L_1$

$$Z_{0m} = [(\omega_L\omega_S)/(\omega_L - \omega_S)](mL_1). \tag{10}$$

Experience has shown that the network may be terminated by resistances up to three times this value in order to obtain adequate gain and still retain a satisfactory flatness of response in the pass band.

Equations (4), (6), (7), (8), and (10), are the only ones required for the design of the transformer, but further useful information may be obtained from the equivalent lattice network. It is obvious that perfect cancellation of the undesired signal is obtained when the phase angle in the equivalent lattice arms are equal, which requirement will be fulfilled if the Q's of L_1 and L_2 are equal, provided the losses in the capacitances are negligible. By checking the Q's of these coils at the frequency to be attenuated, the resistor to be added in series with one of

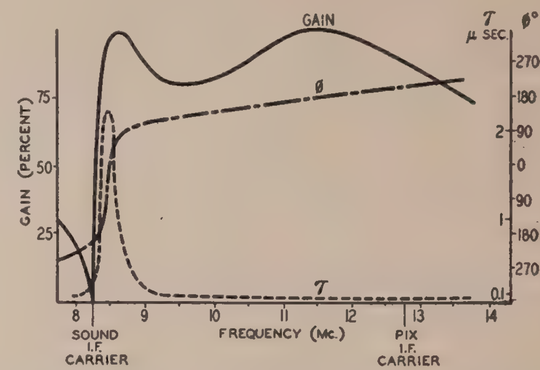


Fig. 2—Gain, phase, and time-delay characteristics of a television intermediate-frequency amplifier stage using a bridged-T network for attenuation of the associated sound channel.

the coils for resistance cancellation may easily be determined.

III. Design Procedure

Summarizing the design formulas in the order of use, (4) becomes

$$m^2 = [(\omega_\infty/\omega_L)^2 - 1]/[(\omega_\infty/\omega_S)^2 - 1]$$
$$= [(f_\infty/f_L)^2 - 1]/[(f_\infty/f_S)^2 - 1]$$

remembering that $m > 1$, (7) becomes

$$L_1 = 1/(C_1m^2\omega_L^2) = 1/(4\pi^2C_1m^2f_L^2)$$

(6) becomes $\quad L_2 = [(m^2 - 1)/2]L_1;$

(8) becomes

$$C_2 = [1/(2L_1\omega_S^2)] - C_1/2 = (1/2)[(1/(4\pi^2L_1f_S^2)) - C_1];$$

and (10) becomes

$$Z_{0m} = [(\omega_L\omega_S)/(\omega_L - \omega_S)](mL_1) = 2\pi[(f_Lf_S)/(f_L - f_S)](mL_1).$$

Two typical designs are given in the following:

Example 1: Given

$C_1 = 5$ micromicrofarads
$f_S = 8.5$ megacycles
$f_L = 11.5$ megacycles
$f_\infty = 8.25$ megacycles

then

$$m = \sqrt{[1 - (8.25/11.5)^2]/[1 - (8.25/8.5)^2]} = 3$$
$$L_1 = 1/(4\pi^2 \times 11.5^2 \times 9 \times 5) = 4.3\mu H_y$$
$$L_2 = 4L_1 = 17.2\mu H_y$$
$$C_2 = (1/2)[(10^{-6}/(4\pi^2 \times 8.5^2 \times 4.3)) - 5 \times 10^{-12}]$$
$$= 38.5 \text{ micromicrofarads}$$
$$Z_{0m} = (2\pi \times 4.3 \times 3)[(11.5 \times 8.5)/3] = 2620 \text{ ohms.}$$

The transmission and phase characteristics of this transformer are shown in Fig. 2 for a termination of 6800 ohms instead of the specified value of $Z_{0m} = 2620$ ohms.

Example 2: Given

$$C = 5 \text{ micromicrofarads}$$
$$f_S = 12.5 \text{ megacycles}$$
$$f_L = 8.5 \text{ megacycles}$$
$$f_\infty = 14.25 \text{ megacycles}$$

then

$$m = \sqrt{[1 - (14.25/8.5)^2]/[1 - (14.25/12.5)^2]} = 2.45$$
$$L_1 = 1/(4\pi^2 \times 8.5^2 \times 2.45^2 \times 5) = 11.7\mu H_y$$
$$L_2 = 2.5 \times L_1 = 29.3\mu H_y$$
$$C_2 = (1/2)[(10^{-6}/(4\pi^2 \times 12.5^2 \times 11.7)) - 5 \times 10^{-12}]$$
$$= 4.4 \text{ micromicrofarads}$$
$$Z_{0m} = (2\pi \times 11.7 \times 2.45)[(12.5 \times 8.5)/4] = 4770 \text{ ohms.}$$

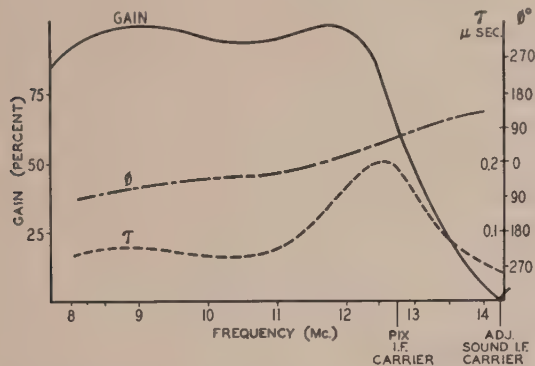


Fig. 3—Gain, phase, and time-delay characteristics of a television intermediate-frequency amplifier stage using a bridged-T network for attenuation of the adjacent sound channel.

Fig. 4—Rear view of experimental intermediate-frequency chassis of Fig. 5.

The transmission and phase characteristics of this transformer are shown in Fig. 3 with 6800-ohm terminating resistances.

A three-stage intermediate-frequency amplifier, using 6J6 in cathode-coupled circuits,[9] and incorporating one of each of the transformers designed above, is shown in Fig. 4, with its circuit shown in Fig. 5.

IV. Attenuation, Phase, and Delay Characteristics

The equivalent lattice section provides a simple and universal means for the exact calculation of the filter characteristics. The ratio of input to output voltages in (1) is

$$E_1/E_0 = [(1 + jRB_S)(1 + jRB_L)]/(jRB_L - jRB_S)$$

which may also be written

$$E_1/E_0 = [RB_L + RB_S - j(1 - RB_L RB_S)]/(RB_L - RB_S). \quad (11)$$

By first determining RB_L and RB_S, the attenuation (or gain) may be plotted from either (1) or (11). If a vector slide rule is used in the calculations, the phase angle is determined at the same time. However, the phase may also be determined from (1)

$$\phi = \tan^{-1} RB_S + \tan^{-1} RB_L - (\pi/2)$$

or from (11)

$$\phi = \tan^{-1} [-(1 - R^2 B_L B_S)/(R(B_L + B_S))]$$

which are equivalent.

The time delay

$$T = \frac{d\phi}{d\omega} = \frac{RL_S[(\omega/\omega_S)^2 + 1]}{1 + (RB_S)^2} + \frac{RL_L[(\omega/\omega_L)^2 + 1]}{1 + (RB_L)^2}.$$

However, the time delay may be approximately determined if, in plotting phase angle ϕ, the points are taken close enough together since

$$T = \Delta\phi/\Delta\omega = \Delta\phi/2\pi\Delta f.$$

[9] G. C. Sziklai and A. C. Schroeder, "Cathode coupled wide-band amplifiers," Proc. I.R.E., this issue, pp. 701–709.

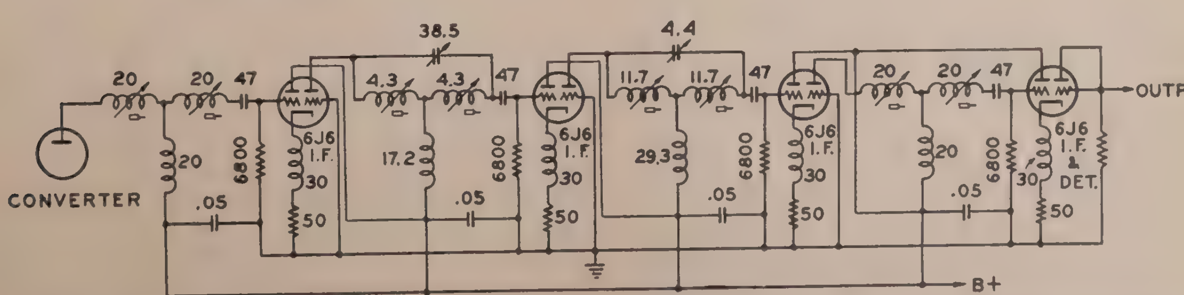


Fig. 5—Circuit of a complete television intermediate-frequency amplifier using bridged-T band-pass coupling networks.

Electron Transit Time in Time-Varying Fields*

ARTHUR B. BRONWELL†, MEMBER, I.R.E.

Summary—**The equations of electron acceleration, velocity, and displacement in time-varying fields are derived for the temperature-limited and the space-charge-limited diodes. These are written in a form making it possible to construct universal curves of electron displacement as a function of transit angle. Separate curves represent the direct-current and alternating-current components of electron displacement, the total displacement being obtained by adding the two components. The curves greatly expedite the solution of electron transit-time problems and aid in visualizing the physical processes at work.**

Introduction

Electronic devices utilize the effects of electrons moving under the guiding influence of electric fields, magnetic fields, or combined electric and magnetic fields. The principles of electron dynamics, therefore, provide the foundation for a rigorous analysis of vacuum-tube performance. The equations of electron acceleration, velocity, and displacement are intimately related to the electrical quantities of potential, current, power, and impedance. The properties of electron tubes may be analyzed in terms of these fundamental relationships. This method of analysis has been developed by a number of authors[1–6] and has its principal application at frequencies where electron-transit-time effects are significant.

The equations of electron motion in superposed direct and alternating fields are derived here for the temperature-limited and space-charge-limited parallel-plane diodes. These equations contain direct-current and alternating-current terms resulting from the respective field components. The direct-current and alternating-current components of electron displacement are plotted as functions of transit angle. These are universal curves, applicable to all temperature-limited or space-charge-limited parallel-plane diodes. The electron-displacement curves for the space-charge-limited diode are based upon first-order approximations and are, therefore, restricted to small-signal applications. The method of approach is similar to that of the previous authors on the subject and some of their relationships are repeated here for reference purposes. Rationalized mks units are used.

* Decimal classification: R130×R332. Original manuscript received by the Institute, February 20, 1945; revised manuscript received, June 4, 1945.

† Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois.

[1] W. E. Benham, "Theory of internal action of thermionic amplifiers, part 1," *Phil. Mag.*, vol. 5, pp. 641–651; March, 1928; part 2, *Phil. Mag. Supp.*, vol. 11, pp. 457–517; February, 1931.

[2] F. B. Llewellyn, "Electron inertia effects," Cambridge University Press, New York, N. Y., 1941.

[3] F. B. Llewellyn, "Vacuum-tube electronics at ultra-high frequencies," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 21, pp. 1532–1573; November, 1933.

[4] J. Müller, "Elektronenschwingungen in Hochvakuum," *Hochfrequenz.* und *Elektroakustik*, vol. 41, pp. 156–167; May, 1933.

[5] D. O. North, "Analysis of the effects of space charge on grid impedance," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 24, pp. 108–136; January, 1936.

[6] W. E. Benham, "A contribution to tube and amplifier theory," Proc. I.R.E., vol. 26, pp. 1093–1170; September, 1938.

Fundamental Relationships

A charge q in an electric field of intensity $\overline{E}$ experiences a vector force $\bar{f}=q\overline{E}$. If the charge moves along a path s, Newton's second law of motion yields

$$\bar{f} = q\overline{E} = m(d^2\bar{s}/dt^2) \tag{1}$$

$$d^2\bar{s}/dt^2 = (q/m)\overline{E}. \tag{2}$$

Two successive integrations of (2) yield the electron velocity and displacement as a function of time. In the cases considered here, $\overline{E}$ is a function of time and this substitution must be made before the integration can be completed. The integration constants are evaluated from known or assumed boundary conditions.

The electric-field distribution in space may be obtained from a solution of the divergence equation

$$\nabla\cdot\overline{E} = \rho/\epsilon \tag{3}$$

where ρ is the space-charge density and ϵ is the permittivity.

If the space-charge density ρ moves with a velocity $\bar{v}$, the current density at any point in the interelectrode space is

$$\overline{J} = \rho\bar{v} + \epsilon(\partial\overline{E}/\partial t). \tag{4}$$

The two terms on the right-hand side of (4) are the convection and displacement current densities, respectively.

The force acting upon a differential space charge $\rho d\tau$ is $\bar{f}=\rho\overline{E}d\tau$. The power transferred from the field to this differential space charge is force times velocity, or $dp=\rho\overline{E}\cdot\bar{v}d\tau$. Integrating this over volume τ, we obtain the total power transfer

$$p = \int_\tau \rho\bar{v}\cdot\overline{E}d\tau. \tag{5}$$

Let us now apply these relationships to the parallel-plane diode. Equation (3) then becomes

$$\partial E/\partial x = \rho/\epsilon. \tag{6}$$

Substituting ρ from (6) into (4), we obtain

$$J = \epsilon[(\partial E/\partial x)(dx/dt) + (\partial E/\partial t)] = \epsilon(dE/dt). \tag{7}$$

Thus, the current density is the time rate of change of electric flux density as we ride along with the electron. Further substitution of E from (2) in (7) yields

$$J = (\epsilon m/q)(d^3x/dt^3). \tag{8}$$

The average current density throughout the diode space (at a given instant of time) is

$$J_{av} = (1/\tau)\int_\tau Jd\tau. \tag{9}$$

In the parallel-plane diode, we have $d\tau=Adx$. If the separation distance between diode planes is d, equation (9) becomes

$$J_{av} = (1/d)\int_0^d Jdx. \tag{10}$$

The total current is the product of average current density times area. Substitution of (7) yields

$$i = J_{av}A = (A/d)\int_0^d J dx = (\epsilon A/d)\int_0^d (dE/dt)dx. \quad (11)$$

The power transfer from the field to the moving space charge is obtained by writing (5) for the parallel-plane diode, thus:

$$p = A\int_0^d \rho v E dx. \quad (12)$$

Finally, the potential at any point in the diode space is given by

$$V = -\int_0^x E dx. \quad (13)$$

If the diode potential contains direct-current and alternating-current components, the electric field in the diode space will likewise have superposed direct and alternating components. Equation (2) and successive integrations show that the electron acceleration, velocity, and displacement equations then contain direct and alternating terms, while (11) and (12) yield direct and alternating terms in the current and power-transfer equations. Having considered the general relationships, we now turn to the equations of electron motion in the time-varying fields.

Temperature-Limited Diode

Consider an electron in motion in the temperature-limited diode of Fig. 1. The potential is assumed to have

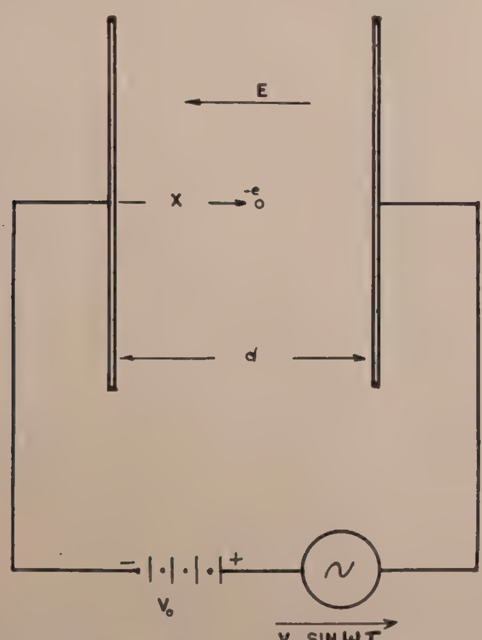


Fig. 1—Parallel-plane diode with superposed direct and alternating fields.

direct and alternating components represented by $V = V_0 + V_1 \sin \omega t$. Assuming that the space-charge density is sufficiently small so that it does not alter the field distribution, we have $E = -(1/d)(V_0 + V_1 \sin \omega t)$. The electron charge is taken as $q = -e$. Substitution for E and q in (2) yields the equation of electron acceleration

$$d^2x/dt^2 = (e/md)(V_0 + V_1 \sin \omega t). \quad (14)$$

Two successive integrations of (14) yield the electron velocity and displacement. Assuming that the electron

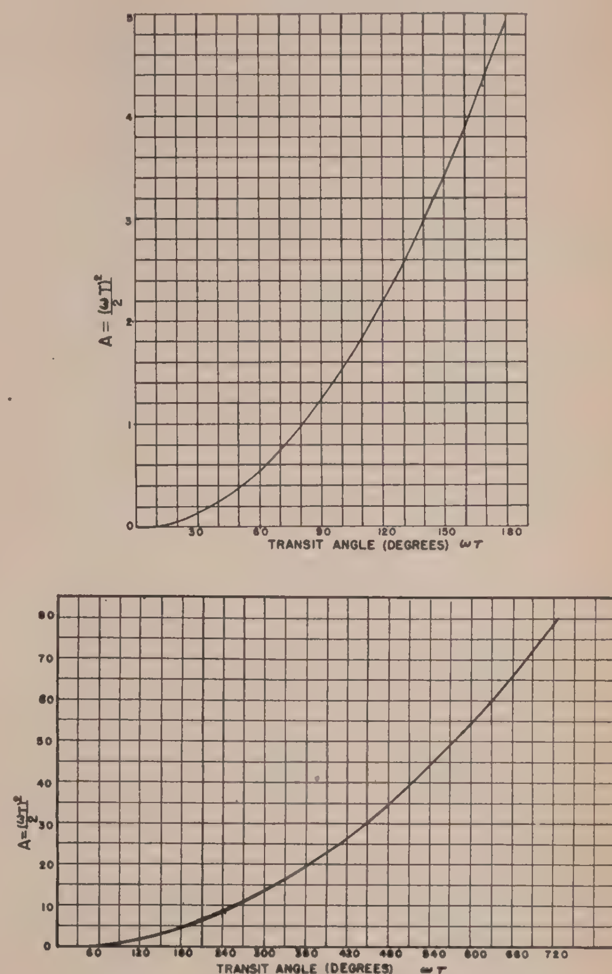


Fig. 2—Direct-current component of electron displacement parameter x/k as a function of transit angle for temperature-limited parallel-plane diode.

leaves the cathode at time t_0 and phase $\phi = \omega t_0$, we have

$$dx/dt = (e/md)\left[V_0(t-t_0) - V_1/\omega(\cos \omega t - \cos \omega t_0)\right] + v_0 \quad (15)$$

$$x = (e/md)\left[(V_0(t-t_0)^2/2) - (V_1/\omega^2)(\sin \omega t - \sin \omega t_0) + (V_1/\omega)(t-t_0)\cos \omega t_0\right] + v_0(t-t_0). \quad (16)$$

Let T be the total time required for the electron to travel[7] a distance x, thus $T = t - t_0$. Writing (16) in terms of T and t_0 gives the result

$$x/k = (\omega T)^2/2 + (V_1/V_0)\left[\cos \phi(\omega T - \sin \omega T) + \sin \phi(1 - \cos \omega T)\right] + v_0(\omega T)/\omega k. \quad (17)$$

$$x/k = A + (V_1/V_0)B + C \quad (18)$$

where

$$k = eV_0/\omega^2 md = 1.76 \times 10^{11}(V_0/\omega^2 d) \text{ (mks units)}$$
$$A = (\omega T)^2/2$$
$$B = \cos \phi(\omega T - \sin \omega T) + \sin \phi(1 - \cos \omega T)$$
$$C = v_0(\omega T)/\omega k. \quad (19)$$

[7] The transit time T used here corresponds to $T + \delta$ used by Llewellyn, and others, where δ is the variation from the direct-current transit time.

The quantity ωT is the *transit angle* representing the number of radians of alternating potential during the electron transit time T. The term A in (18) is the electron displacement parameter x/k in a direct-current field for zero initial velocity. This is the parabola plotted in Fig. 2. The term $(V_1/V_0)B$ is the alternating component of x/k as a function of time. This is plotted as a function of ωT for various values of ϕ in Fig. 3.

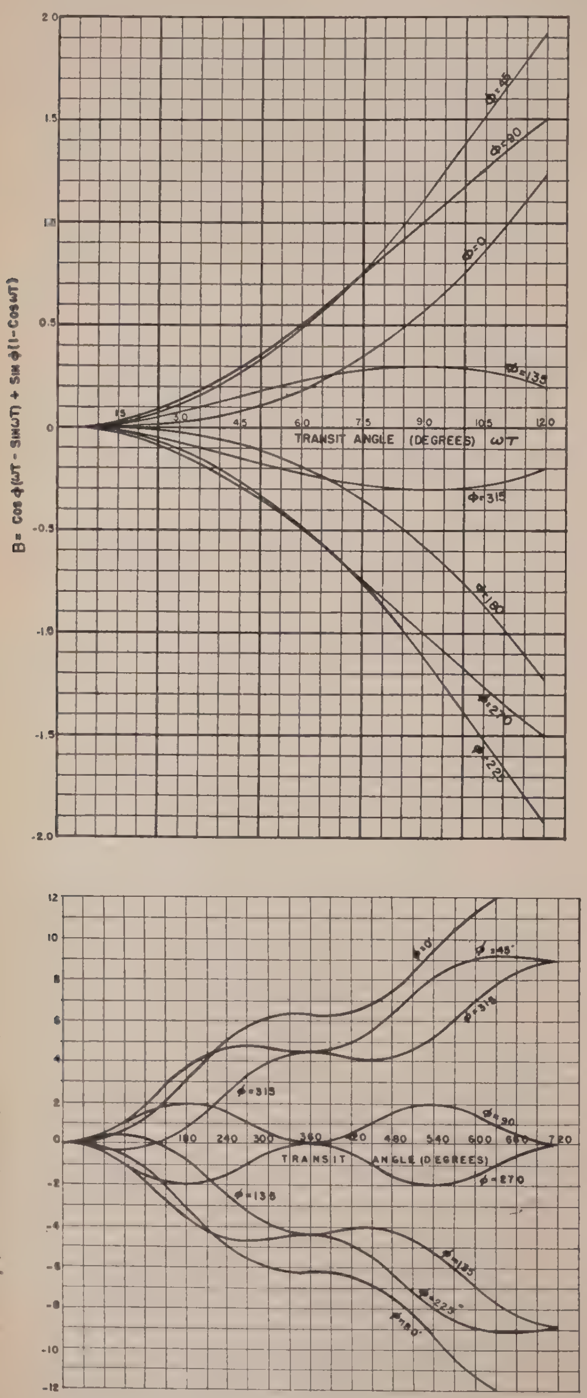


Fig. 3—Alternating component of x/k as a function of transit angle for temperature-limited parallel-plane diode.

To find the electron displacement for a given transit angle, it is necessary merely to obtain the values of A and B from Figs. 2 and 3 and compute the value of C from (19). Substitution of these in (18) yields the electron displacement.

The reverse process; that is, finding the transit time corresponding to a given electron displacement, is a little more difficult. The value of x/k is first computed and the direct-current transit angle for this value of x/k is obtained from Fig. 2, as a first approximation. Values of transit angle in this vicinity are then assumed until one is found such that the values of A, B, and C satisfy (18).

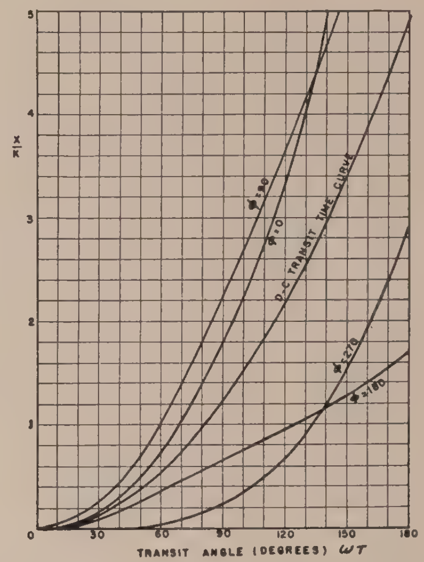


Fig. 4—Total transit angle for various values of ϕ, with $V_1/V_0=1$ and $v_0=0$.

Fig. 4 shows the sum of the direct-current and alternating-current components of x/k for various departing phase angles for the ratio $(V_1/V_0)=1$. In general, the deviation of the total transit time from the direct-current transit time is less for large transit angles than for small transit angles. The reason for this is quite obvious when we realize that the alternating-current field alternately accelerates and retards the electron, while the direct-current field exerts a constant accelerating force in the same direction.

If the field has no direct-current component, we have $V_0=0$. In order to evaluate (17), it is first necessary to multiply both sides by V_0, yielding the following:

$$x/k' = V_1B + v_0(\omega T)/\omega k' \tag{20}$$

where

$$k' = e/\omega^2md = 1.76 \times 10^{11}/\omega^2d \text{ (mks units).}$$

As an example, consider an electron moving in an alternating field between the parallel grids of a klystron oscillator. Assume that

$d=0.002$ meter

$v_0=1.33\times10^7$ meters per second (corresponding to a direct-current accelerating potential of 500 volts)

$V_1=300$ volts (crest of alternating voltage)

$\omega=18\times10^9$

$\phi=180$ degrees.

The value of x/k' is 7.35×10^3. If there were no field between grids, the transit angle from (20) would be $\omega T=\omega x/v_0=2.7$ radians or 155 degrees. Assuming values of ωT in this vicinity and obtaining B from Fig. 3, we obtain the value of $\omega T=175$ degrees or $T=1.69\times10^{-10}$ seconds, which is found to satisfy (20) for the assumed conditions. It is interesting to observe that the transit angle is quite large, and the customary assumption of negligibly small transit angle, which is used to simplify the analysis of velocity modulation tubes, is seriously questionable.

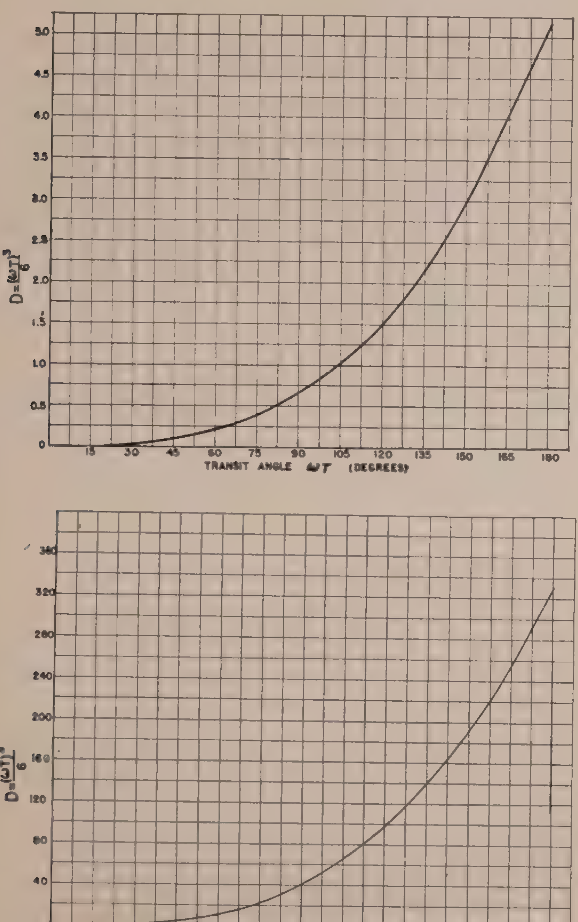


Fig. 5—Direct-current component of x/M for space-charge-limited parallel-plane diode.

Space-Charge-Limited Diode

In the temperature-limited diode, a uniform field distribution in the diode was assumed. However, in the space-charge-limited diode, the electric intensity is a function of the space-charge distribution as given by (6), and the method of approach is different.

Again it is assumed that the potential has direct-current and alternating-current components. In general, the current is not a linear function of the voltage, and must be represented by a Fourier series. As an approximation for small-signal operation, the higher-order terms in the series may be discarded, leaving only the first-order terms. Llewellyn has shown that the first-order correction to the direct-current transit time is a

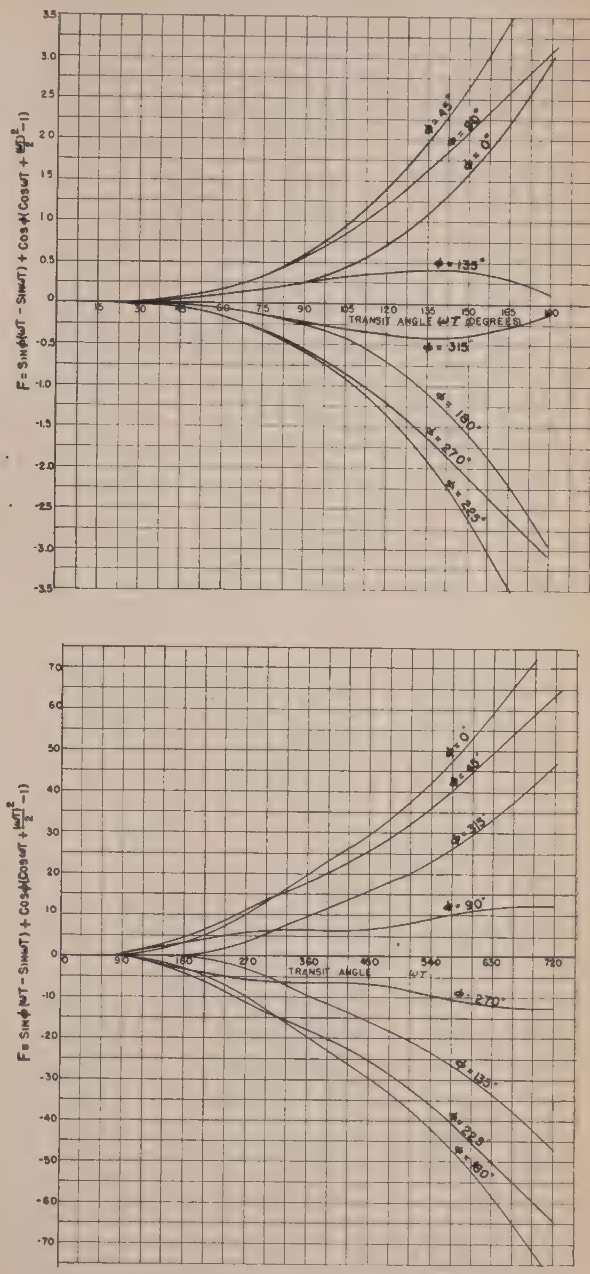


Fig. 6—Alternating-current component of x/M for space-charge-limited diode.

function only of the first-order alternating current.[8] We therefore assume a current density of the form

$$J = J_0 + J_1 \sin \omega t \tag{21}$$

where J_0 is the direct-current component and J_1 is the amplitude of the alternating-current component.

Substituting (21) in (8), with $q=-e$, we have the equation of electron motion in terms of the current-density components

[8] See paragraphs 18–20 of footnote reference 2.

$$d^3x/dt^3 = -(e/\epsilon m)[J_0 + J_1 \sin \omega t]. \tag{22}$$

A change of variable simplifies the mathematical analysis. Let $T=t-t_0$ and $d/dt=d/dT$, where T is again the transit time. Equation (22) then becomes

$$d^3x/dT^3 = -(e/\epsilon m)[J_0 + J_1 \sin(\omega T + \phi)] \tag{23}$$

where $\phi=\omega t_0$ is the phase angle of electron departure measured with respect to the alternating component of current. Successive integration yields the electron acceleration, velocity, and displacement equations, thus:

$$d^2x/dT^2 = -(e/\epsilon m)[J_0T-(J_1/\omega)\cos(\omega T+\phi)+C_1] \tag{24}$$

$$dx/dT = -(e/\epsilon m)[(J_0T^2/2)-(J_1/\omega^2)\sin(\omega T+\phi)+C_1T+C_2] \tag{25}$$

$$x = -(e/\epsilon m)[(J_0T^3/6)+(J_1/\omega^3)\cos(\omega T+\phi)+C_1T^2/2+C_2T+C_3]. \tag{26}$$

It is assumed that at zero transit time $(T=0)$ the electron leaves the cathode $(x=0)$ with zero initial velocity. This permits an evaluation of the constants C_2 and C_3 in the above equations. For small-signal operation and complete space-charge-limited emission, it may be assumed that the off-cathode electric intensity is zero at all values of time. Consequently, the electron acceleration is zero when $T=0$, and the constant C_1 may be evaluated. Thus, if we set $x=0$, $dx/dT=0$, and $d^2x/dT^2=0$ when $T=0$, the constants are evaluated and (26) becomes

$$x/M = (\omega T)^3/6 + (J_1/J_0)\sin\phi(\omega T - \sin\omega T) + \cos\phi(\cos\omega T + (\omega T)^2/2 - 1)] \tag{27}$$

$$x/M = D + (J_1/J_0)F \tag{28}$$

where

$$M = -(eJ_0/\omega^3 m\epsilon) = -1.98\times 10^{22}\,(J_0/\omega^3) \text{ (mks units)} \tag{29}$$

$$D = (\omega T)^3/6 \tag{30}$$

$$F = \sin\phi(\omega T - \sin\omega T) + \cos\phi[\cos\omega T + (\omega T)^2/2 - 1]. \tag{31}$$

According to the convention adopted here, the electron travels in the $+x$ direction and consequently the direct-current component of current density J_0 is negative. The term D in (28) is the value of x/M in a direct-current field with zero initial velocity. This is plotted in Fig. 5. The term F is the alternating-current component of x/M.

Curves of F as a function of ωT for various entering phase angles ϕ are shown in Fig. 6. The use of these curves in the determination of electron transit time in space-charge-limited diodes is the same as that previously described for the temperature-limited diode, except that the direct-current and alternating-current components of current density are required instead of the potentials. The current density may be taken as the total current divided by the diode area.

Acknowledgment

The author wishes to acknowledge gratefully the guidance of Professor W. G. Dow in a similar undertaking, and the assistance of Dr. R. E. Beam.

Attention Authors

Papers Desired for 1946 I.R.E. Technical Meeting

Outstanding papers on timely subjects are desired for the program of the I.R.E. Technical Meeting shceduled for January 23, 24, 25, and 26, 1946. All of the fields listed on the cover of the Proceedings should be included if the program is to be truly representative of the interests of the Institute. It will be possible to accept only a limited number of papers for the technical program. In order to receive consideration of your paper, the following rules should be followed:

1. The title and a brief abstract of the paper, similar to the summaries published at the beginning of articles in the Proceedings, but not more than 75 or 80 words in length, should be submitted as soon as possible. All abstracts must be received prior to November 10, 1945.
2. Correspondence should be sent to The Institute of Radio Engineers, 330 West 42nd Street, New York 18, New York, marked to the attention of the Papers Committee, 1946 I.R.E. Technical Meeting.
3. Length of oral presentation should be limited to about 20 minutes. Extra time will be allowed for discussion.
4. Demonstration papers are desirable.
5. Authors are responsible for obtaining military clearance where required.
6. Submission of the papers for publication in the Proceedings of the I.R.E. is desired, but is not a necessary requirement for acceptance.
7. **Papers published in any journal prior to the date of the Technical Meeting necessarily will be withdrawn from the program.**
8. A condensed version or summary of the paper, including the most important illustrations, must be prepared by authors whose papers are accepted, and must be available by January 1, 1946.

Institute News and Radio Notes

Executive Committee

August 8 Meeting: At the Executive Committee meeting, held on August 8, 1945 the following were present: R. A. Heising, treasurer (acting chairman); G. W. Bailey, executive secretary; W. L. Barrow, E. F. Carter, W. H. Crew, assistant asecretary; Alfred N. Goldsmith, editor; Haraden Pratt, and G. T. Royden (guest).

Correction: The spelling of the names of the following people serving on the Electroacoustics Committee should be corrected: B. D. Bower should be B. B. Bauer and H. F. Olsen should be H. F. Olson.

Membership

Approval was given to the 265 applications recommended by the Admissions Committee and listed on pages 34A–46A of the September, 1945, issue of the PROCEEDINGS.

Admissions Committee's Recommendations: Executive Secretary Bailey read the July 23 and August 2, 1945, letters from Mr. G. T. Royden, chairman of the Admissions Committee, concerning an interpretation of the Constitution regarding the procedure to be followed by the Admissions Committee when submitting its recommendations to the Board of Directors through the Executive Committee. The Executive Committee discussed the subject with Mr. Royden, who was present. Unanimous approval was given to the recommendation that there shall be handed to the Board full lists of persons approved for membership, not approved for membership on purely routine grounds, and not approved for membership on a broader or interpretation basis. Further, the report to the Executive Committee from the Admissions Committee shall give supporting data relative to each of the last-named cases, including information furnished by the references, so that the Executive Committee may consider such cases where appropriate.

Credit for Military Experience: Unanimous approval was given to the recommendation that the Admissions Committee may, at its discretion, interpret a specific number of years of military experience which includes technical activities as the partial or total equivalent of the corresponding number of years of engineering experience, and to an extent dependent on the technical quality and concentration of the applicant's work.

Editorial Department: Dr. Goldsmith presented the following matters, among others:

Papers Procurement Circularization: The membership of the Institute was circularized in relation to the preparation of new papers for the PROCEEDINGS. Between 150 and 200 persons indicated that they were already writing papers; an approximately equal number plan shortly to write papers; and a substantially equal number will write papers when security regulations permit. Thus, about 500 papers are in prospect (which indicates the correctness of the Board action in setting aside $20,000 for the publication of approximately one thousand extra pages of the PROCEEDINGS during the postwar period.) The tabulation of all the replies received from the membership has been carried out for the Papers Procurement Committee, and the results will be sent to the individual group and subgroup chairmen for appropriate follow-up.

Waves and Electrons: The first issue of a possible new Institute publication, WAVES AND ELECTRONS, has been printed and distributed in limited numbers.

Technical Committee Appointments: Unanimous approval was given to the appointment of technical-committee personnel.

Canadian I.R.E. Council: Approval of the Executive Committee was unanimously given to the use of the designation "Canadian I.R.E. Council."

Co-operation with Other Standardizing Groups: Unanimous approval was given to the suggestion that the I.R.E. Standards Committee and other technical committees co-operate with standardizing groups in other organizations to the end that standards adopted by all groups shall be identical or reasonably concordant.

Board of Directors Nomination Petitions

The following petition, signed by 45 voting members in good standing, arrived at the Institute office on August 13, 1945. The names of the signers are listed in the order in which they appear on the petition.

"To the Board of Directors:

"By this petition we, the undersigned voting members of I.R.E., nominate for membership on the Board of Directors for 1946 Mr. Virgil M. Graham, Williamsport, Pennsylvania.

L. E. West	Montoursville, Pa.
W. S. Lovett	Williamsport, Pa.
R. G. Petts	Williamsport, Pa.
M. O. Schilling	Williamsport, Pa.
P. W. Erickson	Williamsport, Pa.
J. J. Wellendorf	Williamsport, Pa.
H. L. Ratchford	Williamsport, Pa.
H. E. Smithgall	Williamsport, Pa.
F. L. Burroughs	Williamsport, Pa.
W. P. Mueller	Williamsport, Pa.
W. C. Freeman, Jr.	Williamsport, Pa.
A. W. Keen	Williamsport, Pa.
J. H. Seidner	Williamsport, Pa.
C. B. Eckel	Williamsport, Pa.
G. N. Mahaffey	Williamsport, Pa.
J. R. Steen	Emporium, Pa.
H. E. Ackman	Emporium, Pa.
R. A. McNaughton	Emporium, Pa.
N. LaMont Kiser	Emporium, Pa.
R. F. Carlson	Emporium, Pa.
R. E. Palmateer	Emporium, Pa.
W. A. Dickinson	Emporium, Pa.
R. K. Gessford	Emporium, Pa.
W. H. Ottemiller, Jr.	Emporium, Pa.
M. I. Kahl	Emporium, Pa.
C. R. Smith	Emporium, Pa.
H. Melzer	Emporium, Pa.
W. A. Weiss	Emporium, Pa.
Edmund Kahl	Emporium, Pa.
Arthur V. Baldwin	Emporium, Pa.
R. A. Swan	Salem, Mass.
Herbert H. Chun	Salem, Mass.
C. W. Reash	Emporium, Pa.
V. H. Campbell	Emporium, Pa.
W. R. Jones	Emporium, Pa.
G. L. Rishell	Emporium, Pa.
E. E. Overmier	Emporium, Pa.
Harvey J. Klumb	Rochester, N. Y.
Maurice B. Huntington	Rochester, N. Y.
William F. Bellor	Rochester, N. Y.
Kenneth J. Gardner	Rochester, N. Y.
Roy S. Anderson	Rochester, N. Y.
Ken. L. Henderson	Rochester, N. Y.
Howard H. Brauer	Rochester, N. Y.
Harry E. Gordon	Rochester, N. Y."

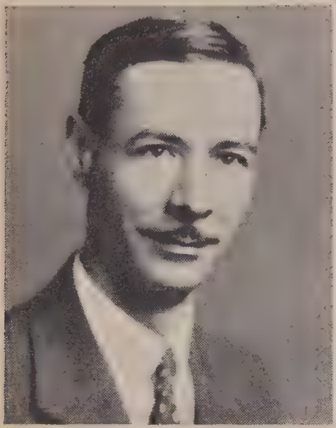
The following petition, signed by 51 voting members in good standing, arrived at the Institute office on August 13, 1945. The names of the signers are listed in the order in which they appear on the petition.

"To the Board of Directors:

"We, the undersigned voting members of The Institute of Radio Engineers, hereby nominate Mr. Royal V. Howard to the Board of Directors of The Institute of Radio Engineers, 1946–48, in accordance with Article VII, Section 1 of the Institute's Constitution.

Frederick Ireland	Hollywood, Calif.
F. L. Hopper	Pasadena, Calif.
Robert C. Moody	North Hollywood, Calif.
A. K. Jensen	Montrose, Calif.
Alan P. Chesney	Encino, Calif.
C. F. Wolcott	Beverly Hills, Calif.
W. W. Lindsay, Jr.	West Los Angeles, Calif.
Allan A. Kees	San Francisco, Calif.
F. R. Brace	Berkeley, Calif.
A. E. Towne	San Mateo, Calif.
F. P. Barnes	San Francisco, Calif.
Hugh D. Farnsworth	Berkeley, Calif.
D. I. Cone	San Francisco, Calif.
Eldridge Buckingham	San Francisco, Calif.
C. T. Anson	El Cerrito, Calif.
S. Andresen	Oakland, Calif.
James R. Grace	San Mateo, Calif.
George E. Sleeper, Jr.	Berkeley, Calif.
W. Noel Eldred	San Mateo, Calif.
Ralph C. Shermund	San Mateo, Calif.
Brunton Bauer	Palo Alto, Calif.
Gerhard R. Fisher	Palo Alto, Calif.
Robert I. Hatch	San Francisco, Calif.
E. G. Danielson	San Francisco, Calif.
Charles E. Walsh	San Anselmo, Calif.
Gilbert W. Cattell	Berkeley, Calif.
Philip A. Ekstrand	Vallejo, Calif.
V. Ford Greaves	San Francisco, Calif.
Don C. Wallace	Long Beach, Calif.
John M. Kaar	Palo Alto, Calif.
John F. Kramer	San Francisco, Calif.
A. W. Moody	San Francisco, Calif.
Francis S. Benson	San Francisco, Calif.
Ernst H. Schreiber	Los Angeles, Calif.
C. R. Skinner	San Francisco, Calif.
Paul F. Johnson	Altadena, Calif.
G. Stewart Paul	Oakland, Calif.
L. J. Black	Oakland, Calif.
W. W. Hanscon	San Francisco, Calif.
H. J. Scott	Berkeley, Calif.
Edward A. Schlueter	Oakland, Calif.
Wm. Aboussleman	North Hollywood, Calif.
Frank M. Kennedy	Los Angeles, Calif.
J. M. Baldwin	Salt Lake City, Utah
Arthur G. Forster	Oakland, Calif.
Gabriel M. Giannini	West Los Angeles, Calif.
Edward L. Gove	North Hollywood, Calif.
S. S. Mackeown	Pasadena, Calif.
Harry R. Lubcke	Hollywood, Calif.
John K. Hilliard	West Los Angeles, Calif.
Lester E. Reukema	Berkeley, Calif."

I.R.E. People



HARADEN PRATT

HARADEN PRATT

Haraden Pratt (A'14–M'17–F'29), vice-president and chief engineer of the American Cable and Radio Corporation, on July 26, 1945, was elected chairman of the Radio Technical Planning Board, one of the world's leading engineering groups concerned with the technical future of the radio industry and related services. Mr. Pratt will take office October 1, 1945. He succeeds Dr. W. G. R. Baker, vice-president, General Electric Company, who has been chairman since the RTPB was organized in September, 1943.

Long recognized as one of the leading contributors to radio, Mr. Pratt now assumes a position of even greater influence with an organization that is responsible in the United States for the scientific development of radio as applied to both communications and industry. The Radio Technical Planning Board is a nonprofit group, sponsored by The Institute of Radio Engineers, the Radio Manufacturers Association, the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, and a long list of major organizations in allied fields.

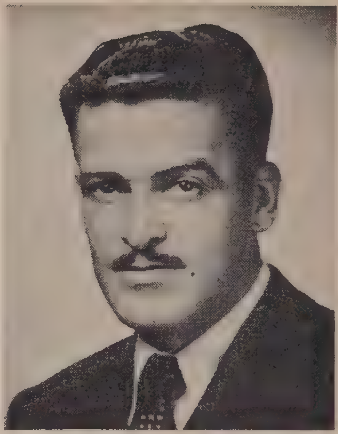
Mr. Pratt, in addition to his position with the American Cable and Radio Corporation, is vice-president and chief engineer, Mackay Radio and Telegraph Company, All America Cables and Radio, Inc., The Commercial Cable Company; vice-president, Federal Telephone and Radio Corporation, all associates of the International Telephone and Telegraph Corporation.

During a career which started on the Pacific Coast in 1906, Mr. Pratt has been a prominent figure in the growth of radio both here and abroad. He engineered the construction of some of the earliest and largest radio installations in the country, and has served with various divisions of the United States Government—the Bureau of Steam Engineering, Navy Department; and the Bureau of Standards, Department of Commerce. Mr. Pratt received his degree at the University of California, and joined the Federal Telegraph Company, a predecessor company of the Federal Telephone and Radio Corporation, in 1920. Eight years later he became chief engineer of Mackay Radio and soon thereafter was made vice-president.

In his international activities concerned with radio, Mr. Pratt was company representative at meetings of the International Radio Consultative Committee in Bucharest in 1937, and at the International Radio and Telegraph Conference in Cairo in 1938. He also served as United States Government technical adviser at the International Radio Conference at Washington in 1927, and on the Consultative Committee on Radio at Copenhagen in 1931.

At the time of his election to the chairmanship of the Radio Technical Planning Board today, Mr. Pratt was a delegate of The Institute of Radio Engineers to the RTPB and Chairman of the Panel on Radio Communications of that group.

Mr. Pratt is a past president of The Institute of Radio Engineers, Secretary of the I.R.E., and a member of its Board of Directors. In 1944 he was awarded the I.R.E. Medal of Honor.



JOSEPH H. LANDELLS

JOSEPH H. LANDELLS

Joseph H. Landells (A'41) of San Francisco was named communications application engineer at San Francisco for the Westinghouse Electric Corporation on August 22, 1945. In his new post, Mr. Landells will be responsible for Westinghouse coverage of the communications industry and radio broadcast stations throughout the San Francisco Bay area.

A native of Winnepeg, Canada, Mr. Landells first joined Westinghouse at San Francisco in 1928 as an order interpreter. In 1930 he resigned to specialize in radio communications work. From early 1942 through the following year, he served as a co-ordinator on the Army's training program with the San Francisco Unified School District and as an instructor in radio engineering for evening classes at Stanford University. He joined the Marines in December, 1943, and served until May, 1945, as an instructor in electronics.

WILLIAM S. HALSTEAD

WILLIAM S. HALSTEAD

William S. Halstead (M'38–SM'45), president of the Halstead company, will serve Farnsworth Television and Radio Corporation as consulting engineer on radio communications equipment and traffic control as well as on other phases of electronics. Farnsworth recently acquired all of the assets of the Halstead Traffic Communications Corporation, thus uniting two pioneering engineering organizations.

G. R. SHAW

G. R. Shaw (M'40–SM'43) recently was appointed chief engineer of the RCA Tube Division to be located at Harrison, N. J.

G. R. SHAW

Harold C. Vance

Harold C. Vance

Harold C. Vance (M'30), who has been appointed manager of the direct sales department of the RCA Tube Division, will supervise the sales of all tube types to commercial broadcasters, air lines, police, educational institutions, and industrial users.

He joined the RCA organization in 1930, as manager of commercial broadcast and police transmitter sales in the Middle Western states. In 1937 he was, transferred to RCA Victor's Camden, N. J., headquarters to direct sales of facsimile, frequency modulation, and special commercial equipment. Shortly after Pearl Harbor, Mr. Vance was given a special assignment as manager of the Tube Division's Navy apparatus contract work. Later, when material for commercial tube construction became critical, he supervised the rebuilt tube activities which enabled many of the nation's broadcasters to maintain schedules despite acute tube shortages.

Mr. Vance is a graduate of Washington State College, where he received a degree in electrical engineering. While a student there he helped construct KWSC, which is operated by the school, and has been called the first educational station in the country.

❖

Raymond C. Fancy

Raymond C. Fancy

Raymond C. Fancy (A'43–M'45), formerly with the radio engineering section of the Army Services Forces Headquarters, Sixth Service Command, Chicago, has been appointed to head a new division of Barnes and Reinecke, industrial designers and engineers, Chicago.

Mr. Fancy's war work included radio engineering on aircraft and radio range stations for the Army Air Forces, as well as design, development and inspection of radio materials and equipment for the Army Signal Corps and Army Engineers. He will be in charge of instruction manual and visual service aids production for his company. At one time associated with WCFL, CBS, and with WJJD as chief engineer, Mr. Fancy's most recent projects have been confined almost exclusively to writing and preparing instruction manuals on U. S. Navy panoramic radio equipment.

❖

Francis X. Rettenmeyer

The appointment of Francis X. Rettenmeyer (A'26–M'29–SM'43–F'44) as chief components engineer has been announced by the Federal Telephone and Radio Corporation, affiliate of the International Telephone and Telegraph Corporation. Mr. Rettenmeyer has been constructively active in the fields of radio receivers and wired-radio systems for power and telephone lines. His work will involve the engineering of selenium rectifiers, quartz crystals, transformers and coils, special-purpose and transmitting tubes, "Intelin" cables, and other components. He joined the Newark organization July 1, 1945.

Previously, Mr. Rettenmeyer had been for ten years chief receiver engineer and staff engineer for the RCA-Victor Division of the Radio Corporation of America, at Camden, N. J., his work covering the design and manufacturing in six plants of component parts, radio transmitters and receivers, and sound-motion-picture equipment. He also spent ten years with Bell Telephone Laboratories, where he was responsible for the design and development of all radio receivers, navigation equipment, mobile and fixed unattended station radio-communication equipment, ship-to-shore radio receivers and marine direction finders, power-line-carrier telephone equipment, and measuring equipment. He developed a wired-radio system to be used with the transmission of entertainment programs over power lines or telephone systems without interruption of the regular telephone service.

Born in Oklahoma and educated at the University of Colorado and Columbia in New York, Mr. Rettenmeyer first became interested in electrical engineering while serving in the Naval Aviation Section at San Diego, California during the first World War. Upon receiving his discharge he proceeded at once to the University of Colorado and emerged with a science degree in electrical engineering. This he later supplemented

Francis X. Rettenmeyer

with a Master's degree. Today he holds about thirty patents on radio and wire communication, and is the author of some thirty-five technical papers of note on radio and allied subjects. He is a Fellow of the Radio Club of America and a member of the Institute of Aeronautical Sciences, Franklin Institute, the National Aeronautics Association, Tau Beta Phi, and Eta Kappa Nu.

❖

Robert Corenthal

First Lieutenant Robert Corenthal (A'41) has returned to the Terminal Radio Corporation, 85 Cortlandt Street, New York City, to resume his position as advertising manager and sales engineer, after three years as a pilot in the Army Air Forces.

Lieutenant Corenthal joined the Air Forces on June 4, 1942, and was stationed in this country at various Army airfields until sent overseas in February, 1944, as pilot of a Flying Fortress. He served in Africa and Italy in this capacity and participated in the first shuttle bombing missions to Russia. On his 42nd mission, the heavy bomber he was piloting was shot down August 28, 1944, over Austria. After parachuting to safety, he and his crew were captured and imprisoned

Robert Corenthal

in Germany, until liberated on April 29, 1945, by General Patton's Third Army.

Lieutenant Corenthal has been awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross, Air Medal with three Oak Leaf Clusters, Presidential Unit Citation, and wears Five Battle Stars on his European Theater campaign ribbon.

Previous to joining the Air Forces, Lieutenant Corenthal had been Terminal Radio Corporation's advertising manager for four years. During this time, he was well known in amateur radio and private flying circles.

❖

C. E. Welsher

C. E. Welsher (A'26) has been appointed field supervisor in the electronic apparatus section of the industrial department of the RCA Service Company. He will be responsible for the accumulation and distribution of technical data and training of field personnel in the electronic-heating field. Prior to his present assignment, he was a field specialist on electronic-heating equipment, and was earlier engaged in military electronic equipment installations at various Navy Yards, as a member of his organization's Government department.

❖

Jack Kaufman

Jack Kaufman (A'30–SM'44) has been named head of the San Francisco office of the Aireon Manufacturing Corporation. This Company operates a large electronics division in Kansas City, Kansas, and a hydraulics division in Burbank. It also maintains a research laboratory at Greenwich, Connecticut. The new San Francisco office will serve railroads, mobile transportation, fishing fleets, and steamship companies on the Pacific Coast, and various foreign industries.

Mr. Kaufman, a graduate of the University of California in 1917, has been engaged for a number of years in electronics in San Francisco. He was formerly president of the pioneer firm of Heintz and Kaufman, Limited, and was executive vice president of Globe Wireless, Limited. He was president of the West Coast Electronic Manufacturers' Association, San Francisco Council, and was vice-president of the coastwide group of the same association. Until recently he was a member of the Industry Advisory Committee with the Board of War Communications.

❖

New York Section Radio Pioneers' Party

Nostalgic reminiscences of the "good old days" of the early century, when "tubes" were only supporting cylinders for tuning coils and federal regulations applied to many things but not to radio, will be the order of the evening on November 8, when the New York Section of the I.R.E. holds its 1945 Radio Pioneers' Party at the Hotel Commodore. Louis G. Pacent, as general chairman, is directing the event.

On that night, radio engineers will take a complete holiday from the serious problems of their profession. To sustain this mood, planned entertainment in keeping with the theme of the evening party will be supplemented by impromptu skits and brief addresses that will bring back recollections of the years from 1900 to 1925. There will be few if any serious talks, and those that find their way into the program will be of the early days and the men who were then making history.

One of the mementos of the occasion that will be treasured by those who attend will be a bound booklet containing a none-too-serious but strictly truthful history of wireless, together with a wealth of illustrations unearthed from dusty files, cartoons of veterans, and excerpts from pioneer magazines.

The banquet, which will be held in the Grand Ballroom of the Commodore, will be preceded by a cocktail party. Because of space limitations, attendance has been set at 1000 maximum.

Assisting Mr. Pacent in preparing for the Party are George Lewis, general vice chairman; Ralph R. Batcher, general secretary; Edward J. Content, general treasurer; and the following committee chairmen: Arrangements, Harry C. Gawler and John Q. A. Holloway; Entertainment, Roger M. Wise; Finance, George B. Hoadley; Prizes, Dorman D. Israel; Presentation, O. H. Caldwell; Refreshments, Paul F. Godley; Historical, George H. Clark; Press and Publications, E. L. Bragdon.

Further details of the Radio Pioneers' Party may be obtained from Mr. Batcher, Room 635, 480 Lexington Avenue, New York 17, N. Y.

In Appreciation

The Editorial Department of The Institute of Radio Engineers desires at this time to make public acknowledgment of its thanks to the authors of papers published in the Proceedings particularly during the recent years during which major difficulties have been experienced by all concerned. The authors, without exception, have proved most co-operative in acceding to the wartime requests necessarily made by the Editorial Department; and they have accepted all the economies and inconvenience which it was necessary for the Proceedings to put into effect in order to present the greatest quantity of highest caliber material to the membership within the provisions of Governmental regulations and restrictions.

The Editorial Department, while fully realizing the need for certain wartime measures, has been in complete sympathy with the authors and has recognized that, because of wartime limitations, papers frequently were not presented to our readers in the most impressive or clear manner. With the lifting of paper restrictions, we shall return, as promptly as possible, to a better grade of paper and a superior presentation of articles.

To our authors, we, in the Editorial Department, wish to express a hearty "Thank You" for your fine co-operation and for your patience and understanding of the difficult problems which we all have encountered.

❖

Rochester Fall Meeting

The tentative program for an informal Rochester Fall Meeting, to be held on November 12 and 13, 1945, in Rochester, New York, is given below. The committee in charge extends a cordial invitation to all interested engineers to attend this meeting, which promises to be of great interest.

Preliminary Program
1945 Rochester Fall Meeting
of Members of the
RMA Engineering Department and of
The Institute of Radio Engineers
The Sheraton Hotel, Rochester, New York
November 12 and 13, 1945

Monday, November 12

8:30 A.M. Registration
9:30 A.M. Technical Session (W. L. Everitt Presiding)
A Coaxial Modification of the Butterfly Circuit
E. E. Gross
General Radio Company
Germanium Crystals
Edward Cornelius
Sylvania Electric Prod., Inc.
12:30 P.M. Group Luncheon
Committee Luncheons
2:00 P.M. Technical Session (J. E. Brown Presiding)
Microwave Radar
Donald G. Fink
McGraw-Hill Publishing Co.
High-Quality Sound Recording on Magnetic Wire
L. C. Holmes
Stromberg-Carlson Company
4:00 P.M. Committee Meetings
6:30 P.M. Group Dinner
8:15 P.M. General Session (George Town Presiding)
The Aurora and Geomagnetism
C. W. Gartlein
Department of Physics
Cornell University

Tuesday, November, 13

8:30 A.M. Registration
9:00 A.M. Technical Session (R. A. Hackbusch Presiding)
Report of RMA Eng. Dept.
L. C. F. Horle
RMA Data Bureau
Industry Standardization Work in Television
D. B. Smith
Philco Corporation
12:30 P.M. Group Luncheon
Committee Luncheons
2:00 P.M. Technical Session (L. M. Clement Presiding)
Television—A Review of Technical Status
E. W. Engstrom
RCA Laboratories
War Influence on Acoustic Trends
Hugh S. Knowles
Jensen Radio Mfg. Co.
4:00 P.M. Committee Meetings
6:30 P.M. Stag Banquet
R. M. Brophy—Toastmaster
The Future of Radar
L. A. DuBridge
Radiation Laboratory
Massachusetts Inst. of Tech.

Short-Wave Radio Is Key to Postwar Progress

Optimistic forecasts of expanded post-war short-wave radio activities, in frequency modulation, television, international communications and high-frequency heating for industrial processing and manufacture, are made by Walter Evans (M'36–SM'43), vice-president in charge of radio, radar, and electronics activities of the Westinghouse Electric Corporation, Baltimore, Maryland.

The greatest single factor contributing to this advance, he said, will be the vastly improved "know how" acquired in this promising field during the industry's record war production.

"Every child understands that World War II is a great mechanized conflict," Mr. Evans explained, "but even a great many adults do not realize how completely it has become a war of electronics as well. Practically every phase of both offensive and defensive warfare, material tests, quality control, production-line manufacture, telephone and telegraph communication, radio, radar, and medical and surgical safeguards, depends upon electronics applications.

"We have made great progress in all of these fields, and since nearly all of them depend upon operation in the short-wave spectrum, one can easily see how lessons learned during the war give promise of rapid and, perhaps, spectacular progress after victory."

This forecast came on the twenty-first anniversary of the "coming of age" of short-wave communication, as Mr. Evans put it, pointing out that although the science had been known many years earlier, it was not until June, 1924, that it attained general acceptance among world radio authorities.

That recognition was won, he recalled, in a dramatic demonstration by the late Dr. Frank Conrad, assistant chief engineer of Westinghouse and one of a group of Americans attending a conference of international communications magnates meeting in London to consider a radio link between Europe and South America.

After lengthy discussions of an ultra-long-wave link, Dr. Conrad invited several delegates, among them a former ship's wireless operator, to his hotel room where, using the curtain rod as an antenna, he had the operator copy telegraph news sent by short-wave from Pittsburgh. Informed next day by the still-amazed operator-delegate of the sensational test, the conference shortly thereafter decided to build a short-wave link and out of this recognition came the general acceptance responsible for all modern short-wave radio.

Turning to war and postwar uses, Mr. Evans continued: "Without short wave we would have no radar, that near-magic development of the war which safeguards ships and planes from surprise attack and enables them to track down enemy craft; no static-free frequency-modulation radio; no television; no low-power long-distance communications; and no dielectric heating which today bonds plywood for PT boat hulls and serves a hundred other military and civilian uses.

"Each of these parts was known before the war and limited development was under way but it remained for the war's urgency to hasten their refinement and broaden their applications. Advances of two normal decades have been packed into a half dozen years of war and preparations for war and as a result VJ Day will find us with almost inexhaustible electronics 'know how' waiting to be harnessed to peacetime tasks."

Walter Evans

Pointing out that electronics advances will bring not only the devices for better living, but by its widespread employment, purchasing power to afford and enjoy them, Mr. Evans declared:

"Frequency-modulation radio service, an accomplished fact before the war, will be expanded to bring this noiseless reception to listeners in every metropolitan center across the land. Inquiries in our industrial electronics division for frequency-modulation transmitters indicate widespread interest on the part of broadcasters, and our postwar transmitters and home receivers will include all the refinements developed in producing millions of these units for military planes and tanks.

"Our war-paced engineering and production of radar will yield proportionate advantage for television, its scientific first cousin. All answers for a completely satisfactory black-and-white television service already are at hand and war-learned lessons will speed development of improved color television."

Mr. Evans sees short wave playing an increasingly important part in world affairs after victory with international short-wave stations fostering mutual understanding and good will among nations.

"The war has taught us that these long-range stations, which know no barriers of geographical frontiers or racial prejudice, can become powerful adjuncts of every nation's State Department or Foreign Office. Hitler and Hirohito demonstrated their maximum abuse. It is up to postwar planners to shape this force to maximum good among nations.

"Operation will be improved because of our experiences in wartime communications. This nation's short-wave stations, including our own WBOS at Boston, have been and still are in the service of the Office of Inter-American Affairs and the Office of War Information. This government operation, we believe, should be and probably will be continued for some time after victory because of the importance of these stations in shaping the mutual understanding and trust between nations without which there can be no lasting peace.

"However, Westinghouse is of the firm opinion that ultimate operation of these outlets must be left to private ownership, in the best American traditions; although a continuing, but temporary, over-all government supervision of programs seems desirable in the early years of restored private operation to guard against international incidents and misunderstandings."

High-frequency heating, the electronics science's newest contribution to better-quality-at-lower-cost manufacture, also will reflect war developments in its postwar applications, Mr. Evans said.

"Aided most by short-wave development will be its dielectric applications which have to do with nonconductor materials," he pointed out. "Already used to bond plywood, cure plastics, and dry nylon yarn, this newest tool of industry will find hundreds of new opportunities to improve production and reduce costs for postwar manufacturers.

"Also benefiting from the lessons of war production will be induction heating which is not dependent upon ultra-high-frequency operation. This wonder process which has been reflowing tin, at a saving of up to 65 per cent of this war-scarce material, will provide new and dependable manufacturing shortcuts in heat-treating metals, annealing electrical steels, brazing and welding and many other essential shop operations."

Chester W. Caldwell

Chester W. Caldwell (M'41–SM'43), associate professor of electrical engineering at Purdue University, died suddenly at the age of 42 on June 6, 1945, following a heart attack suffered while he was conducting a class in electronics. Professor Caldwell was one of the leaders in the electronics field, and for the past two years had been in charge of extension work in electrical engineering in addition to his instructional and research duties.

He was born in Howard County, Indiana, on August 3, 1902, and took special work in education at Indiana University and Marion College before taking up the study of electrical engineering at Purdue. He was graduated with the degree of B.S. in electrical engineering in 1931, and in 1938 completed work for the Master's degree in electrical engineering.

During the last two years of his undergraduate days, he was named a research assistant of the Engineering Experiment Station at the University, specializing in television. Following his graduation, he accepted a position at the University of South Dakota, as head of the physics and electrical engineering departments.

In 1934, he returned to Purdue as an instructor, and was named assistant professor in 1938 and associate professor in 1941. He was the author of many authoritative technical articles and textbooks, largely in the field of electronics and radio. He was a member of Tau Beta Pi, Eta Kappa Nu, Sigma Xi, and the American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

Patents Available for License by Alien Property Custodian

A wealth of technical information about electronics has been made available to American manufacturers and research workers by the publication of abstracts of more than 45,000 alien patents now controlled by the Government. More than 3000 of these United States patents relate to radio. They were issued to inventors in Germany, Italy, Japan, and other enemy and enemy-occupied countries prior to the war, and most of them have now been made available for use by American citizens on a nonroyalty, nonexclusive-license basis.

A few of the most interesting patents are listed below.

The inventions disclosed in these patents deal with circuits, tubes, antennas, and equipment of all kinds including direction finding, television, and ultra-short-wave transmission and reception. Many of them had been assigned prior to the war to famous European manufacturing concerns such as Telefunken Gesellschaft, Siemens and Halske A. G., C. Lorenz A. G., Fernseh G.m.b.H., Gustave Ganz and Company, and Julius Pintsch. There are patents relating to radio transmission and reception, interference elimination, multiplex communication, microphones, headsets and loudspeakers, wave filters, amplifiers, tuning devices, capacitors, frequency modulation, and distortion-correction circuits.

Patents issued to German inventors constitute about two thirds of the total number, but in certain fields, Italy is represented by a large number of inventions.

Abstracts of all of the vested patents are offered for sale by the Alien Property Custodian at nominal prices. These abstracts are arranged by United States Patent Office classes, and those containing patents relating to radio are listed below.

Class No.	*Title*	*Class Abstract Price*
116	Signals and Indicators	10¢
177	Electric Signaling	10¢
178	Telegraphy	50¢
179	Telephony	50¢
181	Acoustics	10¢
250	Radiant Energy	$1.00
274	Sound Recording and Reproducing	10¢

Orders for abstracts may be sent to the Office of Alien Property Custodian, Field Building, Chicago 3, Illinois.

Complete sets of abstracts as well as copies of all vested patents are available for examination in any of the Alien Property Custodian Patent Libraries listed below.

Washington, D. C. National Press Bldg. 14th and F Sts.	Portland 8, Ore. 301 Guardian Bldg.
Chicago 3, Ill. Field Bldg. 135 S. LaSalle St.	New York 5, N. Y. 120 Broadway
Kansas City, Mo. 4049 Pennsylvania Ave.	Boston 8, Mass. 17 Court St.

A copy of the "Index and Guide to Vested Alien Patents" may be had gratis by addressing any of these libraries.

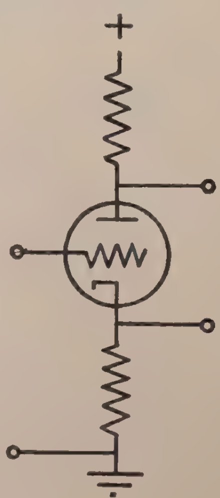
Patent No.	*Class*	*Title*	*Inventor*	*Assigned To*
1,967,306	179–171	Testing Device for Modulated High Frequency	Karl Hallen	C. Lorenz A.G.
1,987,124	250–20	Tuning Control	Paul Muller	Siemens and Halske A.G.
2,157,677	250–11	Receiver for Observing Two Different Signals	Wilhelm Runge	Telefunken Gesellschaft
2,169,742	250–11	Receiving Apparatus for Direction Finding	Hans Scharlan	Telefunken Gesellschaft
2,221,105	178–44	Electric Filter	Rudolf Otto	Fides Gesellschaft
2,252,066	250–20	Interference-Responsive Circuit	George Dallos	United Incandescent Lamp and Electrical Company (Hungary)
2,234,806	178–6.8	Method of Electronoptically Enlarging Images	Martin Ploke	Zeiss Ikon A.G.
2,265,291	179–171	Broad-Band Amplifier	Ulrich Knick	Fernseh G.m.b.H.

Correspondence

Correspondence on both technical and nontechnical subjects from readers of the PROCEEDINGS OF THE I.R.E. is invited subject to the following conditions: All rights are reserved by the Institute. Statements in letters are expressly understood to be the individual opinion of the writer, and endorsement or recognition by the I.R.E. is not implied by publication. All letters are to be submitted as typewritten, double-spaced, original copies. Any illustrations are to be submitted as inked drawings. Captions are to be supplied for all illustrations.

Phase Inverter

The circuit shown below is a simple, direct approach to the problem of obtaining two equal and out-of-phase voltages for feeding a balanced circuit without using transformers. It consists of a cathode-follower circuit in which a resistance equal to the cathode resistance is inserted in the plate lead of the tube. Equal and out-of-phase voltages are then developed across the plate and cathode resistors when a signal is applied to the grid of the tube. Needless to say, this arrangement is best suited to triode-type vacuum tubes, since the screen-grid current cannot interfere with the equality of plate and cathode currents in a triode. Inasmuch as this is a circuit having almost total feedback, the output voltages are affected by tube characteristics only as a second-order effect, and even this does not



interfere with the equality or phase opposition of the two voltages generated. The circuit should prove useful for frequencies from zero up to the point where distributed capacitances affect the equality or phase of the two voltages. It should prove specially advantageous where it is desired to feed a balanced amplifier from an input one side of which is grounded. This should prove useful for direct-current amplifiers in which the input phase-inverting stage frequently presents difficulty. The voltages developed across either resistor are given by the following equations:

$$V_0 = V(G_mR_1)/(1+R_1G_m+2R_1/R_p)$$

or

$$V_0 = V[(R_1G)/(R_p+2R_1+R_1G)]$$

where V_0 = voltage developed across resistor
V = input voltage
R_1 = resistance across which signal is developed, ohms
R_p = plate resistance of tube, ohms
G_m = transconductance of tube, ohms
G = gain of tube

D. L. DRUKEY
17 Outer Drive
Oak Ridge, Tenn.

I.R.E.—A.I.E.E. LECTURES

The New York Sections of the I.R.E. and A.I.E.E. have planned a series of lectures on the subject RADAR to be given during October and November in the Engineering Societies' Auditorium, 33 W. 39th Street, New York City. For further information, send a self-addressed stamped envelope to G. B. Hoadley, 85 Livingston Street, Brooklyn 2, New York, or to A.I.E.E. headquarters.

Tridimensional Equivalent Circuits

In the *General Electric Review*, no. 3, 1944, and PROCEEDINGS of the I.R.E. pp. 284–299; May, 1944, there is published a notable work by G. Kron, S. Ramo, J. R. Whinnery and McAllister on tridimensional equivalent circuits, used for approximate solution of the Maxwell equation.

In connection with the interest manifested in this problem in the United States we desire to call the attention of your writers to some work in this same field which has been published in the Soviet Union by my associates Professor Doctor of Technical Science L. P. Rutenmakher and Candidate in Technical Science Docent Yu. G. Tolstov.

1. L. P. Rutenmakher, "Artificial electric model of a multidimensional system." Address before Academy of Science U.S.S.R., vol. 31, no. 3., p. 198; 1940. In Russian and German languages.
2. L. P. Rutenmakher, "Electrical modeling of physical phenomena," *Electricity*, no. 5, 1940.
3. L. P. Rutenmakher, "Electrical modeling of physical phenomena for solution of boundary problems in mathematical physics," *Technical Physics*, vol. 12, nos. 2–5, p. 47; 1942.
4. L. P. Rutenmakher, "Electrical modeling—The Electro-Integrator." Book published by the Academy of Science U.S.S.R., (to be distributed in the United States for promoting cultural relations with foreign countries.)
5. Yu. G. Tolstov, "Use of the electrical modeling method for solving certain cases in underground hydraulics," *Technical Physics*, no. 10, 1942.
6. Yu. G. Tolstov, "Conformal transformation of doubly bounded fields with the aid of the electrical integrator." Report of the Academy of Science U.S.S.R., no. 7–8, 1944.

In these works is developed the theory of multiple-circuit electrical models, consisting of various combinations, for concentrating the parameters of electric circuits.

The distribution of current and potentials in these artificially assembled models of multidimensioned fields of different configurations gives an approximate representation of differential equations in mathematical physics of the elliptic, parabolic, and hyperbolic types, with an arbitrary number of independent co-ordinates for different boundary conditions.

Use of these models permits solutions of the equations of Maxwell, Fourier, Poisson, Laplace, Bigazh-Monichesky, and others.

With a specially designed electrical integrator, consisting chiefly of resistances and and capacitors, solutions have been found for numerous cases in the fields of electrical engineering, thermodynamics, hydraulics, aerodynamics, and the like.

Solutions have also been found for general problems of arbitrary boundary conditions, spatial and time, and for solving nonhomogenous equations.

By introducing special co-ordinates, not related to the spatial arrangement of elements of the model it has been possible to build models for "connected tridimensional and four-dimensional fields," "multiple-leaved (laminar) surfaces," "Iman and other complex geometric forms," which are encountered in mathematical physics.

It has recently been possible to use mathematical apparatus with the Fredholm integral equations for analyzing the properties of multidimensioned models, and also to set up special models for solving integral equations of arbitrary types.

We attach much importance to the work of G. Kron and others as an indication of the rapid development of the problem of the electrical modeling of physical phenomena.

May the international co-operation between investigators, in the United States and the Soviet Union and others of the United Nations, which has been carried on under difficult conditions in wartime, continue to progress successfully in this field, which is now in the first stages of its development and has bright prospects.

G. M. Krijanovsky
Director of the Energy Institute of the Academy of Science U.S.S.R.—Moscow.
Active member of the Academy of Science U.S.S.R.

High-Frequency Error Curves for Adcock Radio Direction-Finder Arrays

When determining errors in a radio direction-finder station located in a new, untested location, it is helpful to know, for a given signal and observed bearing, just how much error is due to actual "site trouble" and how much is due to antenna-array error. If the antenna error is known, the exact magnitude of remaining site errors may then be considered and conclusions drawn accordingly.

The following method of measuring errors in Adcock antenna arrays may prove useful to some field engineers engaged in high-frequency direction-finding work.

It is well known that the average high-frequency crossed Adcock array, using a goniometer, is subject to a varying number of degrees error in certain directions, when taking bearings on different frequencies, the errors being due primarily to the physical spacing between the antennas.

Many engineers not too familiar with the problem figure intuitively that the ratio of North-South antenna pair pickup to East-West pickup is such that, if plotted out vectorially, would enable them to measure the bearing of the signal by noting the angle of the vector resultant. This view is useful to present the approximate operation and theory of the system, but to find the exact bearing that a given antenna array will produce for a signal from a given direction, we must figure the exact ratio of North-South pickup to East-West pickup and then find the resultant angle exactly. It will then be noted that this angle may be several degrees different than the true angle or bearing of the signal.

Some engineers have been known to believe that the crossed-Adcock system using a goniometer is unsuitable for use with frequencies so high as to make the greatest antenna spacing more than a half wavelength, but by using the method we will now discuss, it will be seen that a correction curve may be drawn which will correct exactly all errors due to the spacing of the array; thus an array spaced a half-wavelength at perhaps 15 megacycles may be used effectively with good results up to about 20 megacycles.

Prior to drawing the curve, we must choose the frequency, have the antenna spacing in feet (S), and then, using the following data, find instrument bearings for the true bearings from 0 to 45 degrees, in steps of not more than 5 degrees. The two columns of "true" and "observed" bearings will then be all that is necessary for drawing the curve. It is only necessary to plot the error curve up to 45 degrees, as the same values and curve, inverted, may be used from 45 to 90 degrees, and the 0- to 90-degree curve is the same as the 90- to 180-, 180- to 270-, and the 270- to 360-degree curve. The four antennas, or towers making up the array will be assumed to be placed on true North, East, South, and West and will be abbreviated N, E, S, and W.

To find the instrument (antenna) bearing (O) of any true bearing (θ), we start by finding the maximum phase difference between the North and the South antenna, assuming the signal to be coming from true North.

maximum phase difference (N–S) in degrees $=(S\cdot 109.73)/L$

where S is the spacing N–S in feet and L is the wavelength in meters. The value 109.73, a constant henceforth called K, represents pi divided by the ratio of meters to feet (3.28).

Knowing the phase difference N–S for a signal from North, we can easily find the phase difference N–S when the signal is arriving from any other angle θ by

actual phase difference N–S $=\cos\theta[(S\cdot K)/L]$

and for the same signal and same bearing θ we may say

actual phase difference E–W $=\sin\theta[(S\cdot K)/L]$.

We now have the phase difference in degrees for N–S and E–W for a wavelength L and a bearing θ. We know that the actual pickup varies from maximum when the antennas are spaced 180 degrees, to 0 when spaced 0 degrees, thus, assuming our wave to traverse the spacing S as a sine curve, we see that

actual pickup (N–S) $=\sin\frac{1}{2}[(\cos\theta SK)/L]$ (1)

actual pickup (E–W) $=\sin\frac{1}{2}[(\sin\theta SK)/L]$. (2)

Knowing now the exact ratio of the N–S and E–W pickups, we see that the resultant of a vector using these figures will give us the approximate instrument reading. However, to be more exact we may say

tangent of the resultant angle

$$=\frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(\cos\theta SK/L)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}(\sin\theta SK/L)}. \quad (3)$$

But as we wish to find the bearing from North rather than the angle of our vector, we may say that the bearing of the resulting angle in (3) is equal to (90 degrees $-$*0) or, that the true bearing from North is the cotangent* of the resulting angle in (3). Using logs, our complete formula becomes

$$\log \cot O = \log \sin \tfrac{1}{2}(\cos \theta SK/L) - \log \sin \tfrac{1}{2}(\sin \theta SK/L). \quad (4)$$

Values of O for bearings θ in steps of 5 degrees from 0 to 45 degrees should be worked out and these values O used as points of the X axis in the graph of the curve. The number of degrees correction necessary to obtain θ is plotted up and down on the Y axis; the Y values will be (−) from 0 to 45 degrees and (+) from 45 to 90 degrees.

A bearing may be taken on the instrument, and the error Y in degrees applied from the corresponding instrument bearing on the X axis to obtain the true bearing from North. This error may be appreciable, as is seen from the following problem:

Find the instrument reading O (disregarding site and other errors of course) for a true bearing of 15 degrees, the antenna spacing being 36 feet, and the wavelength $L=15$ meters.

Using (4), we find the answer to be 35 degrees, a 20-degree error. Of course the problem gave a high frequency for a 36-foot antenna spacing selected in order to illustrate the point, but all frequencies would have errors of several degrees shown on the curves.

If these antenna error curves are made up for all frequencies intended to be used prior to making up the regular site calibration curves, by a comparison of the two curves it may be easier to see why the bearings from the radio direction-finder station sometimes appear so far in error and at other times appear to have no appreciable error. Thus other matters might be investigated which would reveal a large percentage or error that would ordinarily be chalked up to "site error."

JAMES HOLBROOK
70th AACS Group
APO 246
c/o Postmaster
San Francisco, Calif.

Emission-Limited Diode

In an emission-limited diode comprising two coaxial cylinders, the time required for an electron to pass from the cathode to the anode is

$$t_T = \frac{1.68 \times 10^{-8} R_2 M}{\sqrt{E_a}} \quad (1)$$

where

t_T = time in seconds required for an electron to pass from the cathode to the anode

R_2 = radius of anode in centimeters

E_a = potential difference in volts between cathode and anode

and where M is a factor given by the series

$$M = \left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) - \frac{1}{3}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^3 - \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\cdot\frac{1}{7}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^4 + \cdots \quad (2)$$

where

R_1 = radius of cathode in centimeters.

The value of M may be determined directly from Fig. 1.

The time required for an electron to pass from the cathode to the grid in an emission-limited triode comprising coaxial cylindrical electrodes may be approximately determined from (1) if (E_g+E_p/μ) is substituted for E_a and if the radius of the grid in centimeters is substituted for R_2, E_g and E_p being the potential in volts of the grid and plate, respectively, and μ being the amplification factor.

In the derivation of (1), the effects of space charge and relativistic change of mass were neglected.

In the derivation which follows, the additional symbols appear:

F = strength of electric field in statvolts per centimeter

K = a constant which is evaluated

s = distance in centimeters

E = difference in potential in statvolts between cathode and anode

a = acceleration in centimeters per second per second

e/m = ratio of the electric charge of an electron to the mass of an electron in statcoulombs per gram

t = time in seconds

C_1 = a constant of integration

C_2 = a constant of integration

Equation (1) may be derived as follows:

In a coaxial cylindrical diode operating under emission-limited conditions, if the effect of space charge is neglected, the potential gradient at any point between the electrodes varies inversely as the distance from that point to the common center of the electrodes; that is,

$$F = \frac{K}{R_1 + s}. \quad (3)$$

The potential gradient is the potential increment per distance increment; that is, $F = dE/ds$. Substituting,

$$\frac{dE}{ds} = \frac{K}{R_1 + s}. \quad (4)$$

The potential difference between the cathode and the anode is the sum of all the potential increments from zero to $(R_2 - R_1)$; therefore.

$$E = \int_0^{R_2-R_1} \frac{K}{R_1+s}\,ds \quad (5)$$

$$= K \log\frac{R_2}{R_1}. \quad (6)$$

Rearranging terms,

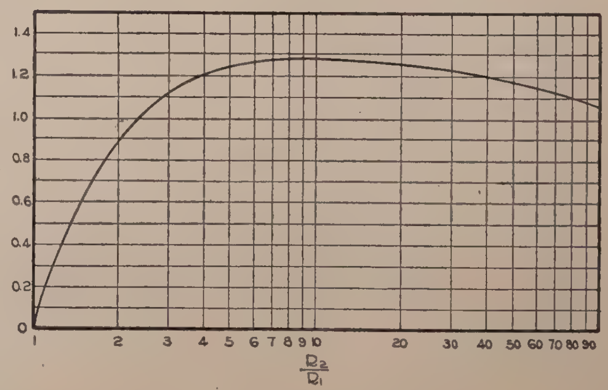
$$K = \frac{E}{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}. \quad (7)$$

Substituting in (3) from (7).

$$F = \frac{E}{(R_1+s)\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}. \quad (8)$$

The acceleration of an electron in an electric field is

$$a = \frac{e}{m}F. \quad (9)$$



Putting $a = d^2s/dt^2$, and substituting the value of F from (8),

$$\frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = \frac{\frac{e}{m}E}{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}\cdot\frac{1}{R_1+s}. \quad (10)$$

A first integral of (10) is

$$\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2 = \frac{2\frac{e}{m}E}{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}\cdot\log(R_1+s) + C_1. \quad (11)$$

Since $(ds/dt)^2$ is the velocity squared, and since the velocity is zero when s is zero.

$$C_1 = -\frac{2\frac{e}{m}E\log R_1}{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}. \tag{12}$$

Substituting in (11) from (12),

$$\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2 = \frac{2\frac{e}{m}E}{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}\cdot\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1} \tag{13}$$

$$dt = \sqrt{\frac{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}{2\frac{e}{m}E\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}}}\,ds \tag{14}$$

Integrating,

$$t = \frac{(R_1+s)\sqrt{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}}{\sqrt{2\frac{e}{m}E}}\left[2\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{1/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{3/2} + 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{5/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{7}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{7/2} + \cdots\right] + C_2. \tag{15}$$

When s is zero, t is zero; therefore, $C_2=0$. Substituting,

$$t = \frac{(R_1+s)\sqrt{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}}{\sqrt{2\frac{e}{m}E}}\left[2\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{1/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{3/2} + 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{5/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{7}\left(\log\frac{R_1+s}{R_1}\right)^{7/2} + \cdots\right]. \tag{16}$$

When an electron has completed a transit from cathode to anode, $s=R_2-R_1$, and $t=t_T$. Substituting,

$$t_T = \frac{R_2\sqrt{\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}}}{\sqrt{2\frac{e}{m}E}}\left[2\left(\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^{1/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\left(\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^{3/2} + 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\left(\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^{5/2} - 2\cdot\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{7}\left(\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^{7/2} + \cdots\right]. \tag{17}$$

Simplifying,

$$t_T = \frac{R_2}{\sqrt{2\frac{e}{m}E}}\left[\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) - \frac{1}{3}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^3 - \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\cdot\frac{1}{7}\left(2\log\frac{R_2}{R_1}\right)^4 + \cdots\right]. \tag{18}$$

When the value for e/m is inserted, and when E is changed to practical units, (18) becomes (1).

Virgil M. Brittain
1204 N.W. 20 Avenue
Portland 9, Oregon

Institute Representatives on Other Bodies—1945

American Documentation Institute: J. H. Dellinger
Council of the American Association for the Advancement of Science: J. C. Jensen
Joint Co-ordination Committee on Radio Reception of the E.E.I., N.E.M.A., and R.M.A.: C. E. Brigham
National Research Council, Division of Engineering and Research: F. E. Terman
Radio Technical Planning Board: W. L. Barrow (D. B. Sinclair alternate)
U. R. S. I. (International Scientific Radio Union) Executive Committee: C. M. Jansky, Jr.
U. S. National Committee, Advisers on Electrical Measuring Instruments: Melville Eastham and H. L. Olesen
U. S. National Committee, Advisers on Symbols: L. E. Whittemore and J. W. Horton
U. S. National Committee of the International Electrotechnical Commission: H. M. Turner
ASA Standards Council: Alfred N. Goldsmith (H. P. Westman, alternate)
ASA Sectional Committee on Letter Symbols and Abbreviations for Science and Engineering: H. M. Turner
ASA Subcommittee on Letter Symbols for Radio Use: H. M. Turner
ASA Sectional Committee on National Electrical Safety Code, Subcommittee on Article 810, Radio Broadcast Reception Equipment: E. T. Dickey (Virgil M. Graham, alternate)
ASA Sectional Committee on Preferred Numbers: A. F. Van Dyck
ASA Sectional Committee on Radio: Alfred N. Goldsmith, chairman; Haraden Pratt, and L. E. Whittemore
ASA Sectional Committee on Radio-Electrical Co-ordination: J. V. L. Hogan, C. M. Jansky, Jr., and L. E. Whittemore
ASA Board of Directors: F. R. Lack
ASA Electrical Standards Committee: H. M. Turner (H. P. Westman, alternate)
ASA Sectional Committee on Acoustical Measurements and Terminology: E. D. Cook and H. F. Olson
ASA Sectional Committee on Definitions of Electrical Terms: Haraden Pratt
ASA Subcommittee on Vacuum Tubes: B. E. Shackelford
ASA Sectional Committee on Electric and Magnetic Magnitudes Units: J. H. Dellinger
ASA Sectional Committee on Electrical Installations on Shipboard: I. F. Byrnes
ASA Sectional Committee on Electrical Measuring Instruments: Wilson Aull, Jr.
ASA Sectional Committee on Graphical Symbols and Abbreviations for Use on Drawings: Austin Bailey (H. P. Westman, alternate)
ASA Subcommittee on Communication Symbols: H. M. Turner
ASA Sectional Committee on Specifications for Dry Cells and Batteries: H. M. Turner
ASA Sectional Committee on Standards for Drawings and Drafting Room Practices: Austin Bailey (H. P. Westman, alternate)
ASA Committee on Vacuum Tubes for Industrial Purposes: B. E. Shackelford
ASA War Committee on Radio: Alfred N. Goldsmith*
ASA War Standards Committee on Methods of Measuring Radio Noise: C. J. Franks and Garrard Mountjoy

* Also chairman of its Subcommittee on Insulating Material Specifications for the Military Services.

Institute Committees—1945

Admissions

G. T. Royden, *Chairman*
F. A. Polkinghorn, *Vice-Chairman*

R. D. Avery
H. H. Beverage
R. M. Bowie
J. L. Callahan
H. A. Chinn
J. D. Cobine
E. D. Cook
M. G. Crosby
Lloyd Espenschied
T. T. Goldsmith, Jr.
A. R. Hodges
R. H. Langley
Knox McIlwain
A. R. Morton
H. J. Reich
C. E. Scholz
S. W. Seeley
J. E. Shepherd
M. E. Strieby
J. C. Stroebel
F. D. Webster

Awards

W. C. White, *Chairman*
Haraden Pratt, *Vice-Chairman*

Austin Bailey
W. L. Barrow
L. A. du Bridge
E. W. Engstrom
D. E. Harnett
Keith Henney
J. V. L. Hogan

Board of Editors

Alfred N. Goldsmith, *Chairman*

R. R. Batcher
R. S. Burnap
P. S. Carter
L. M. Clement
J. D. Cobine
W. G. Dow
E. W. Engstrom
W. L. Everitt
W. G. H. Finch
G. W. Gilman
P. C. Goldmark
A. W. Graf
F. W. Grover
L. B. Headrick
C. M. Jansky, Jr.
H. S. Knowles
J. D. Kraus
D. G. Little
F. B. Llewellyn
S. S. Mackeown
Nathan Marchand
E. D. McArthur
E. L. Nelson
H. F. Olson
H. O. Peterson
G. W. Pickard
R. A. Powers
Haraden Pratt
C. A. Priest
H. J. Reich
V. W. Sherman
L. C. Smeby
E. C. Wente
H. A. Wheeler
W. C. White
L. E. Whittemore
G. W. Willard
William Wilson
C. J. Young
V. K. Zworykin

Constitution and Laws

R. F. Guy, *Chairman*

Austin Bailey
E. F. Carter
I. S. Coggeshall
R. A. Heising
F. E. Terman
H. R. Zeamans

Executive

W. L. Everitt, *Chairman*
R. A. Heising, *Vice-Chairman*
Haraden Pratt, *Secretary*

S. L. Bailey
W. L. Barrow
E. F. Carter
Alfred N. Goldsmith

Investments

R. A. Heising, *Chairman*

Fulton Cutting
W. L. Everitt
Haraden Pratt
H. M. Turner
H. R. Zeamans

Education

A. B. Bronwell, *Chairman*

R. G. Anthes
W. E. Arcand
R. E. Beam
W. H. Campbell
C. C. Chambers
H. A. Chinn
J. D. Cobine
Melville Eastham
G. H. Fett
A. W. Graf
R. F. Guy
Alan Hazeltine
L. N. Holland
F. S. Howes
G. B. Hoadley
F. H. Kirkpatrick
R. C. Manhart
W. H. Radford
H. J. Reich
J. D. Ryder
W. J. Seeley
F. R. Stansel
J. A. Stratton
W. O. Swinyard
G. R. Town
Ernst Weber
W. C. White
Irving Wolff
G. A. Woonton

Membership

E. D. Cook, *Chairman*

C. R. Barhydt
C. M. Burrill
J. M. Clayton
R. I. Cole
J. M. Comer, Jr.
W. C. Copp
W. H. Doherty
A. V. Eastman
W. G. Eaton
A. J. Ebel
W. N. Eldred
D. G. Fink
Samuel Gubin
L. B. Headrick
L. G. Hector
Albert Preisman
J. L. Reinartz
Bernard Salzberg
R. B. Shanck
J. C. Stroebel
Sarkes Tarzian
Bertram Trevor
K. S. Van Dyke
H. M. Wagner
Ernst Weber
R. H. Williamson

(Section Secretaries *Ex-officio*)

Membership Solicitation Policy

F. B. Llewellyn, *Chairman*

Alfred N. Goldsmith
R. A. Heising
Keith Henney
L. C. F. Horle
L. P. Wheeler

Nominations

J. V. L. Hogan, *Chairman*
H. M. Turner, *Vice-Chairman*

Beverly Dudley
O. B. Hanson
C. M. Jansky, Jr.
R. C. Poulter
W. C. White

Papers Procurement

Dorman D. Israel, *General Chairman*
Edward T. Dickey, *Vice-General-Chairman*

Howard Benner
W. F. Bonner
R. M. Bowie
A. B. Bronwell
Madison Cawein
J. T. Cimorelli
I. S. Coggeshall
J. I. Cornell
M. G. Crosby
Alfred Crossley
Harry Diamond
G. H. Floyd
A. E. Harrison
T. A. Hunter
Jesse Marsten
I. E. Mouromtseff
J. R. Nelson
H. F. Olson
Walter Peek
J. D. Reid
D. B. Sinclair
A. M. Skellett
Karl Spangenberg
H. J. Tyzzer
K. S. Van Dyke
W. L. Webb
W. C. White

Papers

F. B. Llewellyn, *Chairman*

H. A. Affel
W. L. Barrow
H. A. Chinn
J. K. Clapp
I. S. Coggeshall
S. B. Cohn
E. J. Content
C. W. Corbett
M. G. Crosby
F. W. Cunningham
R. B. Dome
E. B. Ferrell
D. G. Fink
H. S. Frazier
R. L. Freeman
Stanford Goldman
F. W. Grover
O. B. Hanson
T. J. Henry
E. W. Herold
J. V. L. Hogan
F. V. Hunt
Harley Iams
L. F. Jones
J. G. Kreer, Jr.
Emil Labin
F. R. Lack
H. C. Leuteritz
C. V. Litton
Knox McIlwain
H. R. Mimno
I. E. Mouromtseff
G. G. Muller
A. F. Murray
J. R. Nelson
D. O. North
A. F. Pomeroy
J. R. Poppele
Simon Ramo
F. X. Rettenmeyer
S. A. Schelkunoff
D. B. Sinclair
Karl Spangenberg
Dayton Ulrey
A. P. Upton
K. S. Van Dyke
E. K. Van Tassel
J. R. Whinnery
Irving Wolff
J. W. Wright
H. R. Zeamans

Public Relations

I. S. Coggeshall, *Chairman*

F. W. Albertson
G. W. Bailey
O. H. Caldwell
O. B. Hanson
Keith Henney
C. W. Horn
C. M. Jansky, Jr.
(S. L. Bailey, Alternate)
E. K. Jett
T. R. Kennedy, Jr.
J. R. Poppele
A. F. Van Dyck
E. M. Webster
L. P. Wheeler

Sections

R. A. Heising, *Chairman*

S. L. Bailey
E. D. Cook
Virgil M. Graham
R. V. L. Hartley
F. A. Polkinghorn
G. T. Royden
B. E. Shackelford
W. O. Swinyard
H. P. Westman

(Section Chairmen *Ex-Officio*)

Tellers

G. B. Hoadley, *Chairman*
Edward J. Content, *Vice-Chairman*
Trevor Clark

Books

The Electrolytic Capacitor, by Alexander M. Georgiev

Published (1945) by Murray Hill Books, Inc., 232 Madison Ave., New York 16, N. Y. 179 pages+12-page index+xii pages. 72 illustrations. $6\frac{1}{4}\times9\frac{1}{4}$ inches. Price, $3.00.

This is the author's first book and the third contribution in book form to the electrolytic capacitor art. It contains twenty-one short chapters averaging five to six pages of reading material exclusive of the numerous illustrations. The consecutive chapters gradually lead the reader through general capacitor information, comparison of capacitor types, the miscellaneous parts of an electrolytic capacitor used in the manufacture, the processing of these parts, routine and special tests, common troubles encountered during the manufacture or use, the design, and some of the more common uses and limitations of an electrolytic capacitor.

Considering the secrecy surrounding the industry and the lack of technical literature covering the manufacture of capacitors, this work represents a compilation of technical data and information which should prove valuable to a relatively large group of readers. Each chapter completely covers the general subject of that chapter, and appears to create a desire to proceed with the next chapter until the entire work is covered.

The scope of this book apparently is planned for a specific group of readers including engineers and technicians engaged in the manufacture of electrical equipment using electrolytic capacitors, and technicians engaged in the repairs or servicing of such electrical equipment.

This group of readers as well as others who desire a general knowledge of an electrolytic capacitor will find that this work thoroughly covers all of the general information which they desire and specifically will instruct them how to determine the quality and characteristics of electrolytic capacitors with simple test meters such as are generally available to this group.

The book is printed in a clear and easily readable type which does not distract from the thought of the author, but a more opaque or thicker page would add to the ease of reading as a number of the illustrations reflect through to the opposite page and make some of the reading difficult. It contains a seven-page glossary describing the relatively few technical terms which it has been necessary to use in the text so that even nontechnical readers will find the subject to be easily understandable.

Also included is a complete index as well as a list of illustrations which makes ready reference to any particular point of interest contained in the work.

Although the author has endeavored to describe the construction, manufacture, function, and testing of wet and dry electrolytic capacitors, and to explain the theories of the dielectric films employed on the surface of the plates or electrodes, he has condensed the material and technical data to such a point that a certain group of readers will find it necessary to resort to the many references contained in the bibliography and to the numerous patents listed in order to obtain fully the details of manufacture, theory, and application of electrolytic capacitors. Such a condensation of technical data and information will leave this small group of readers with the impression that the subject has not been thoroughly covered but it is believed that the book will create a sufficient interest to cause this small group of readers to investigate the many references.

This book appears to be free of errors and in the opinion of this reviewer is a very practical up-to-date treatment of the subject.

D. E. Gray
Cornell-Dubilier Electric Corp.
South Plainfield, N. J.

Transmission Lines, Antennas, and Wave Guides, by Cruft Laboratory War Training Staff

Published (1945) by the McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., 330 W. 42 Street, New York 18, New York. 338 pages+8-page index +xvi pages. 239 illustrations. 9×6 inches. Price, $3.50.

This book presents the material given on transmission lines, antennas, wave guides, and wave propagation to the officers in the armed forces receiving preradar training at Harvard University, and it is written for undergraduate students rather than graduates.

The first chapter, 69 pages in length, deals with transmission lines and is the most satisfactory part of the book, both as regards coherence and completeness. The treatment begins with the "telegraph equations" and then proceeds to such topics as transmission-line constants, dissipationless lines, and impedance matching both by means of fractional wavelength transformers and single- and double-stub tuners. A section on circle diagrams shows how graphical calculations may be made on line problems. The student who masters this chapter and works a fair proportion of the 42 problems in the back of the book on lines will be able to cope with many of the engineering problems he will encounter in his later work on lines. Answers are given to about one half of the problems.

The second chapter of the book covering antennas leaves something to be desired. In view of the previous training of the preradar students and limited time available for their instruction, one can sympathize with the authors' self-imposed limitation of avoiding the use of the field equations in introducing the topic. The subject of radiation is introduced by the statement that "all electric charges exert forces on one another according to a law of retarded action at a distance." This statement with illustrations and variations sums up what the student presumably should know about electromagnetic theory. This section, in spite of the authors' pedagogical skill, is weak. The treatment includes a discussion of such topics as radiation resistance, coupled antennas, receiving antennas, and the directivity and gain of a variety of antennas and antenna arrays of technical importance. A study of the 127 pages devoted to antennas and the 31 rather well-chosen problems, if supplemented by field experience, will no doubt give an individual a practical working knowledge of the subject, but will still leave him weak on fundamentals.

The difficulties in which the author of the sections on antennas and wave guides finds himself as a result of an inadequate presentation of the underlying theory are aggravated when the student is introduced to high-frequency circuit elements, in particular, resonant and nonresonant lines, wave guides, and cavity resonators. 67 pages are devoted to these topics. The descriptive material covering techniques is informative and well-selected, and includes brief descriptions of such devices as couplers for interconnecting wave guides and transmission lines, and the transformers and guide sections used in negotiating swivel joints in a wave-guide system. The theoretical material in this chapter is both wordy and incomplete.

The closing chapter of 20 pages on propagation is well written and presents a general survey of propagation as affected by frequency, transmission in both the lower atmosphere and the ionosphere, and abnormalities in propagation. The effect of the earth's magnetic field on propagation is not discussed.

W. D. Hershberger
RCA Laboratories
Princeton, N. J.

Principles of Radio, by Keith Henney

Published (1945) by John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 440 Fourth Avenue, New York, New York. 522 pages+12-page index+viii pages. 317 illustrations. $8\times5\frac{3}{4}$ inches. Price, $3.50.

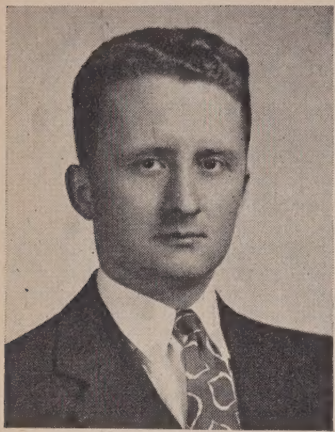
This is the fifth edition of a well-known textbook of elementary radio. In this new edition the author has rearranged the subject material and has achieved an improvement in continuity and presentation. New material has been added in the last three chapters on Frequency Modulation, Ultra-High Frequency Phenomena, and Electronic Instruments. The material has been presented in the simple, readable form characteristic of the text and serves well to introduce the subject material to the uninitiated.

The elimination in this edition of the chapter on Radio-Frequency Amplifiers is considered unfortunate by this reviewer, while the omission of the chapter on Facsimile and Television in favor of the new added material appears to be well considered.

On the whole, this edition, like those preceding it, has certainly achieved the author's aim of introducing the material basic to radio communication particularly to the individual who must study without background and without teacher. The numerous problems throughout the text aid in serving the purpose of the text.

Ferdinand Hamburger, Jr.
The Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore 18, Maryland

Contributors



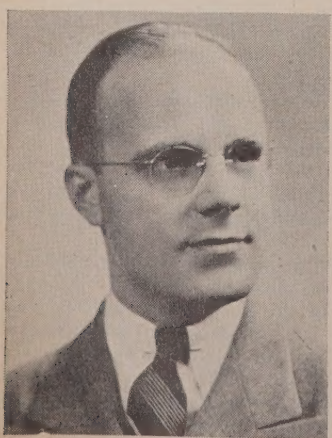
Frederick Dewey Bennett

Frederick Dewey Bennett was born in Miles City, Montana, on June 2, 1917. After receiving his B.A. degree from Oberlin College in 1937, he went to the Pennsylvania State College where he received his M.Sc. degree in 1939 and Ph.D. degree in physics in 1941. From 1941 to 1943 he taught in the physics department at the University of New Hampshire. During the summer of 1942, he was associated with the engineering staff of Pratt and Whitney Aircraft Company engaged in investigation of engine-cooling problems. Since 1943 he has been engaged in aircraft-antenna research and design at Special Projects Laboratory, Engineering Division, ATSC, Wright Field, Dayton, Ohio.

He is a member of the American Physical Society, Sigma Xi, and Phi Beta Kappa.

❖

Arthur B. Bronwell (A'39–SM'43) was born in Chicago, Illinois, in 1909. He received the B.S. degree in electrical engineering in 1933, and the M.S. degree in 1936, from the Illinois Institute of Technology.



Arthur B. Bronwell

This was followed by additional graduate work at the University of Michigan and Northwestern University.

He was employed by the Commonwealth Edison Company as substation operator while attending school, and later as engineer in fixed-capital evaluation. In 1937, he was appointed to the electrical engineering staff of Northwestern University and is now associate professor and director of communications and measurements instruction in the electrical engineering department.

Professor Bronwell was employed by the Bell Telephone Laboratories in the summer of 1941, and served as director of the Army Signal Corps School at Northwestern University.

❖

E. Finley Carter

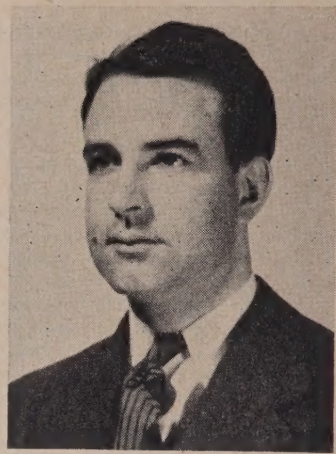
❖

He is chairman of the Committee on Education for The Institute of Radio Engineers, past chairman of the Chicago Section of The Institute of Radio Engineers, a member of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, Society for the Promotion of Engineering Education, Sigma Xi, and Eta Kappa Nu.

❖

E. Finley Carter (F'36) was born in Elgin, Texas, on July 1, 1901. He received the B.S. degree in electrical engineering from Rice Institute in 1922, and upon graduation became associated with the General Electric Company, engaged in radio development. In 1929 he became director of the radio division of the United Research Corporation in New York City, designing radios, circuits, and receivers.

Mr. Carter joined Sylvania Electric Products, Inc., as a consulting engineer in 1932, later becoming assistant chief engineer, and in 1941, was appointed to organize and head the industrial relations department of that organization, a position which he still holds.



Paul D. Coleman

❖

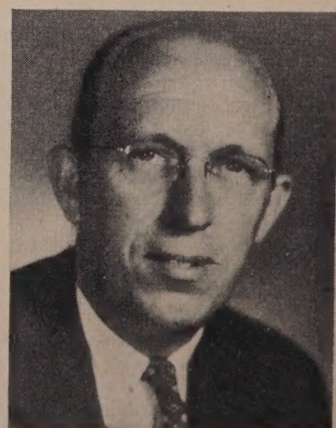
He is an Associate member of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, a member of the American Radio Relay League, and of Tau Beta Pi, and is a member of the Board of Directors of The Institute of Radio Engineers.

❖

Paul D. Coleman was born on June 4, 1918, at Stoystown, Pennsylvania. He received an A.B. degree from Susquehanna University in 1940, and an M.S. degree in 1942 from the Pennsylvania State College, where he was a graduate assistant in physics. Mr. Coleman has been employed since 1942 in the Antenna Branch of the Aircraft Radio Laboratory at Wright Field.

❖

T. P. Kinn (A'36-SM'45) was born in El Paso, Texas, on January 12, 1907. He received the B.S. degree in electrical engineer-



T. P. Kinn

M. J. Larsen

ing from the University of Colorado in 1928, and joined the Westinghouse Manufacturing Company staff as a radio design engineer in the same year. Since that time he has been active in the design of radio communication equipment, including marine, mobile, broadcasting, and aircraft for all types of services, devoting the major part of his time to work on military equipment.

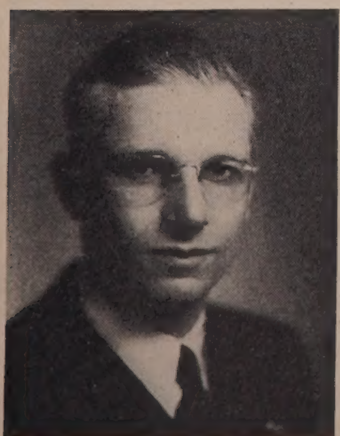
During the 1930's Mr. Kinn was engaged in the development and application of radio frequency to induction and dielectric heating, and in 1941 he became section engineer in charge of active development and design of military communication and radar equipment. In 1944 he was made division engineer in charge of industrial electronic equipment, developing and promoting electronic equipment for industry, such as induction- and dielectric-heating equipment, precision-balancing equipment, mass spectrometer analytical equipment, and other electronic devices.

Mr. Kinn is a member of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, and of panels 8 and 12 of the Radio Technical Planning Board.

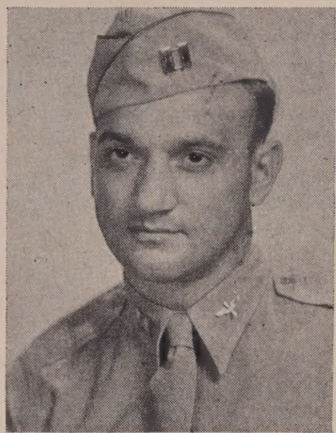
M. J. Larsen (A'42) was born in 1909 at Spencer, Iowa. He received the B.S. degree in electrical engineering in 1933; the M.S. degree in 1934; and the Ph.D. degree in 1937, from the State University of Iowa. From 1928 to 1929 he was with the Northwestern Bell Telephone Company, and spent the summer of 1937 in the research department of the Central Commercial Company.

Dr. Larsen was instructor in electrical engineering from 1937 to 1940 at Michigan College of Mining and Technology. In 1940 he became assistant professor, a post which he held until 1943, when he became associated with the research department of Stromberg-Carlson Company, in Rochester, N. Y., where he has remained to date.

He is a member of Sigma Xi, Eta Kappa Nu, and the Society for Promotion of Engineering Education.



G. J. Lehmann



Allen S. Meier

G. J. Lehmann (SM'44) was born in Paris, France, on April 6, 1909. After receiving his degree in engineering from the École Centrale, in 1931, he became associated with Sadir, a French company, building very-high-frequency communications and radio-navigation equipment, of which he was technical director in 1939.

After his release from the French Army in 1940, he joined the Lyon laboratory of Le Matériél Téléphonique. In 1943 he came to New York, and worked as research engineer with Federal Telephone and Radio Laboratories. He recently left the United States to rejoin Le Matériél Telephonique, in France.

In addition to research work, Mr. Lehmann has been teaching at the École Centrale since 1934, and in 1942 was appointed professor of direction finding and radio navigation at the École Supérieure d'Électricité.

Allen S. Meier was born on March 9, 1911, at Windsor, Connecticut. He received a B.S. degree in physics and mathematics in 1932 and an M.S. degree in physics in 1933 from Trinity College, Hartford, Connecticut. He was associated with the Pratt and Whitney Machine Tool Company and the Connecticut Mutual Insurance Company before service in the Army in 1940. After serving with the 704th Military Police Bn. and the 242nd Coast Artillery Corps, he was transferred to the Signal Corps in 1942 and was assigned to the Radiation Laboratory of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology where he was engaged in research and development. Since December 1942, he has been branch officer of the Antenna Branch, Special Projects Laboratory, Aircraft Radio Laboratories at Wright Field, Ohio.

C. F. P. Rose

C. F. P. Rose (A'22–M'40) was born on September 19, 1901, in Montclair, New Jersey. He entered the radio research department of the Western Electric Company in December, 1920. He was graduated as a student assistant in 1924 and subsequently attended Columbia University Extension School. Since 1925, he has served as a member of the technical staff of the Bell Telephone Laboratories. Mr. Rose has been engaged in designing, developing, installing, and testing experimental and commercial short-wave transoceanic-radiotelephone transmitters for the Bell System in New Jersey, Argentina, and California. Since 1942, he has been engaged in developing special electronic equipment used by the Army.

A. C. Schroeder

G. C. Sziklai

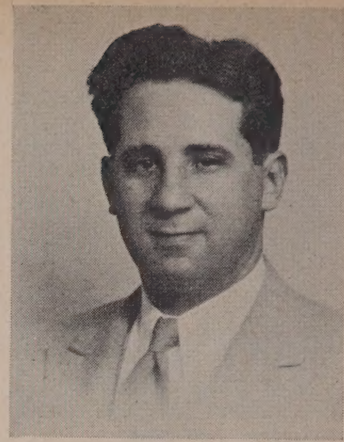
❖

A. C. Schroeder (A'38) was born in West New Brighton, Staten Island, N. Y., on February 28, 1915. He received the B.S. degree in electrical engineering from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1937, and the M.S. degree from the same institution in the same year. He joined the Radio Corporation of America in 1937, and is now engaged in television research at the RCA Laboratories in Princeton, New Jersey. He is a member of the American Association for the Advancement of Science.

❖

G. C. Sziklai (A'41–M'43–SM'43) was born in Budapest, Hungary, on July 9, 1909. He received his absolutorium (equivalent to the M.S. degree) in 1930 from the Pazmany University of Budapest. He was an exchange student at the Technische Hochschule in Munich, Germany, in 1928. In 1931 he joined the Aerovox Corporation, where he became assistant chief engineer. He was the chief engineer of the Polymet Manufacturing Corporation from 1932 to 1935. During 1934. Mr. Sziklai spent a half year in Europe providing consultation to Electrical Component Manufacturers in London and Paris. From 1935 to 1939 he was on the research staff of the Micamold Radio Corporation. He joined the industry service division of the Radio Corporation of America in 1939, and later transferred to the Bloomington division of the same company. Since 1942, he has been in the television research section of the RCA Laboratories at Princeton, New Jersey. Mr. Sziklai is a member of the American Physical Society and Sigma Xi.

❖



A. R. Vallarino

A. R. Vallarino (S'43–A'44) was born in Panama City, Panama, on August 11, 1913. He was graduated in electrical engineering from Stanford University in 1939. Transferring his studies to electrical communications, Mr. Vallarino spent the next three years in graduate and research work at Stanford University.

In 1943 he joined the Federal Telephone and Radio Laboratories in New York City, where he worked as a research engineer.